DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.2D
PSD

JUL 0 7 2021

NAVMC 3500.2D

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A

Encl: (1) AA T&R Manual

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this Training and Readiness (T&R) Manual, contained in enclosure (1), establishes training standards, regulations, and policies for Marines and assigned Navy personnel in the Assault Amphibian (AA) occupational field.

2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.2C W/CH 1, 2

3. Scope. The T&R manual title change from Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) to Assault Amphibian is a reflection of the community name incorporating both vehicle variants, the AAV and the addition of the Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV). All training events wherein AAVs or ACVs are conducting waterborne operations have been revised to include specific language requiring the use of a dedicated safety boat. Verbiage allowing the option of utilizing an AAV or ACV as a safety boat before commencing amphibious operations with naval shipping has been removed. Collective training events (CTEs) have been revised to reflect both vehicle variants. Individual training events (ITEs) remain separate as the AAV and ACV have their own chapters. Marine Corps Task (MCT) 1.1.4.1 Conduct Breaching Operations and all Mobility/Countermobility events for the MK-154 have been removed. Highlights of the major changes included in this manual are:

a. Chapter 1 Overview. Chapter 1 has been adjusted to reflect current organization of this T&R manual.

b. Chapter 2 Mission Essential Tasks. Chapter 2 has been revised to reflect the communities approved and published Marine Corps Tasks.

c. Chapter 3 Battalion and Company Collective Events. The CTEs within Chapter 3 have been reviewed, revised to incorporate the ACV, and validated based on current doctrinal publications. The review

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

resulted in a 14% reduction in the total number of CTEs while E-coded events remained the same.

d. Chapter 4 Platoon Collective Events. The CTEs within Chapter 4 have been reviewed, revised to incorporate the ACV, and validated based on current doctrinal publications. Some events remain specific to the AAV with remarks added to the administrative instruction section in each event. Only one new event has been added; E-coded events remained the same.

e. Chapter 5 Section and Crew Collective Events. The CTEs within Chapter 5 have been reviewed, revised to incorporate the ACV, and validated based on current doctrinal publications. Some events remain specific to the AAV with remarks added to the administrative instruction section in each event. With the removal of outdated CTEs and the addition of new CTEs, the overall amount of events remains the same. There have been four CTEs designated as E-coded at the section level. The use of the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET) has been added as a prerequisite for live training of egress events for all Assault Amphibian and embarked personnel.

f. Chapter 6 MOS 1803 Assault Amphibious Vehicle Individual Events. The ITEs within Chapter 6 have been reviewed, revised, and validated based on current doctrinal publications. The MOS 1803 billet descriptions have been revised. The ITEs have been re-labeled to 1803AAV to distinguish the difference between the ACV and AAV events. The review resulted in a 10% reduction in total number of ITEs. Egress training events have been revised to include the use of the emergency egress breathing devices.

g. Chapter 7 MOS 1833 Assault Amphibious Vehicle Individual Events.
The ITEs within Chapter 7 have been reviewed, revised, and validated based on current doctrinal publications. The MOS 1833 billet descriptions have been revised. The ITEs have been re-labeled to 1833AAV to distinguish the difference between the ACV and AAV events. The review resulted in an 18% reduction in total number of ITEs. Egress training events have been revised to include the use of the emergency egress breathing devices.

h. Chapter 8 MOS 1803 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Individual Events.
Chapter 8 has been added as a new chapter to the manual to document 49 new events associated with the ACV for MOS 1803. Billet descriptions for ACV specific billets for MOS 1803 have been added. The ITEs have been labeled 1803ACV to distinguish the difference between the AAV and ACV events. Egress training events have been revised to include the use of the emergency egress breathing devices.

i. Chapter 9 MOS 1833 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Individual Events.

Chapter 9 has been added as a new chapter to the manual to document 68 new events associated with the ACV for MOS 1833. Billet descriptions for ACV specific billets for MOS 1833 have been added. The ITEs have been labeled 1833ACV to distinguish the difference between the AAV and ACV events. Egress training events have been revised to include the use of the emergency egress breathing devices.

j. Chapter 10 AA Battalion Low Density MOS Individual Events. The MOS 06XX and 28XX ITEs of Chapter 10 have been reviewed, revised, and validated based on current doctrinal publications.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM, Policy and Standards Division (C 466), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, Virginia 22134.

5. Command. This manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

LEWIS A. CRAPAROTTA
Commanding General
Training and Education Command
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10033193800

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location: _____
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this manual)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

AA T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1. . . . . OVERVIEW

2. . . . . MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

3. . . . . BATTALION & COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4. . . . . PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

5. . . . . SECTION & CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

6. . . . . MOS 1803 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

7. . . . . MOS 1833 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

8. . . . . MOS 1803 AMPHIBIOUS COMBAT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

9. . . . . MOS 1833 AMPHIBIOUS COMBAT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

10 . . . . . AA BATTALION LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

APPENDICES

A. . . . . ACRONYMS

B. . . . . TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

C. . . . . CLASS V(W) REQUIREMENTS

D. . . . . SIMULATION

E. . . . . INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

F. . . . . AAV MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

G. . . . . REFERENCES

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION	1004	1-3
T&R EVENT CODING	1005	1-4
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION	1006	1-5
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)	1007	1-11
CRP CALCULATION	1008	1-12
CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING	1009	1-13
NIGHT TRAINING	1010	1-13
RISK MANAGEMENT (RM)	1011	1-13
IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING	1012	1-14
AAV MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS	1013	1-14

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The training and readiness (T&R) program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training, and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SME) from the Fleet Marine Force (FMF) developed core capability mission essential task lists (METL) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps task list. This T&R Manual is built around these METLs and other related Marine Corps tasks (MCT). All events contained in this Manual relate directly to these METLs and MCTs. This comprehensive T&R program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. This T&R Manual contains the collective and individual training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. This T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. This T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps ground T&R program is found in reference (a).

3. This T&R Manual is designed for use by unit commanders to determine pre-deployment training requirements in preparation for training and for formal schools and training detachments to create programs of instruction. This manual focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by FMF units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit mission essential task(s) (MET).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential.

2. Commanders will ensure that all training is focused on their combat mission. Unit training should focus on achieving proficiency in the unit METL. This T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan based on the unit METL, as approved by their higher commander and reported in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). Training will support the unit METL and be designed to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of standards based training consistent with Marine Corps T&R standards cannot be over emphasized.

1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Effective unit training management (UTM) focuses the overall organization on development of training plans based on the unit METL and standards-based community T&R events. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its mission.

2. Unit training management techniques, described in reference MCO 1553.3_, MCTP 8-10A, and MCTP 8-10B provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM.

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their military occupational specialty (MOS) at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. For collective or individual training events not executed and evaluated as part of the daily routine, leaders must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval.

2. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation). The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events.

3. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

1004. ORGANIZATION. This Assault Amphibian T&R Manual is comprised of 10 chapters and 6 appendices. Chapter 1 is an overview of the ground T&R program. Chapter 2 lists the core METs/MCTs supported by the Community, which are used as part of DRRS. Chapters 3-5 contains collective AA events. Chapters 6-10 contain individual events specific to a particular MOS and/or billet, as noted. Appendix A contains acronyms; Appendix B contains terms and definitions; Appendix C contains class V(W) requirements; Appendix D contains simulation information; Appendix E contains consolidated gunnery events; appendix F contains Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) MOS-Specific Physical Standards as the Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) does not currently have any approved standards; and Appendix G contains references.

1005. T&R EVENT CODING

1. Event Code. The event code is an up to 4-4-4 alphanumeric character set:

a. First up to 4 characters indicate MOS or community (e.g., 0321, 1812 or INTL)

b. Second up to 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)

c. Third 4 characters indicate the unit size and supported unit, if applicable (1000 through 9000), and sequence. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of unit size to event code. NOTE: The titles for the various echelons are for example only, and are not exclusive. For example: 4000-level events are appropriate for section-level events as noted, but also for squad-level events.

Collective Training **Command Element**	**Collective Training** **Regiment/Group**	**Collective Training** **Battalion/Squadron**
9000-level	8000-level	7000-level
Collective Training **Company**	**Collective Training** **Platoon**	**Collective Training** **Squad**
6000-level	5000-level	4000-level
Collective Training **Team/Section/Crew**	**Individual Training** **Skills Progression** **MOJT, Advanced Level Schools** **(Core Plus Skills)**	**Individual Training** **Entry-Level** **Formal School** **Training** **(Core Skills)**
3000-level	2000-level	1000-level

Figure. 1-1 T&R Event Levels

2. Grouping. Categorizing events with the use of a recognizable code makes the type of skill or capability being referenced fairly obvious. Examples include: PAT for patrolling events, DEF for events in the defense, FSPT for events related to fire support, etc. There is no special significance to the functional areas, but they should be intuitive to make it as easy as possible for the T&R user to find events. When organizing this T&R Manual, functional areas are alphabetized then the associated events are numbered. The events will be numbered based upon the introduction of each new functional area, allowing up to "999" events. For example: if there are seven administrative events 4431 occupational field (OccFld), then the events should start 4431-ADMN-1001 and run through 1007. Next, the bulk fuel events, BUFL should start at 4431-BUFL-1001.

3. Sequencing. A numerical code is assigned to each collective (3000-9000 level) or individual (1000-2000 level) training event. The first number identifies the size of the unit performing the event, as depicted in figure 1-1. Exception: Events that relate to staff planning, to conduct of a command operations center, or to staff level decision making processes will

be numbered according to the level of the unit to which the staff belongs. For example: an infantry battalion staff conducting planning for an offensive attack would be labeled as INF-PLAN-7001 even though the entire battalion is not actively involved in the planning of the operation. T&R event sequence numbers that begin with "9" are reserved for Marine air-ground task force (MAGTF) command element events. An example of event coding is displayed in figure 1-2.

Functional Area

MOS/Community--------> ####-**####**-**#**### <-1st event in sequence

Event level

Figure 1-2. T&R Event Coding

1006. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. An event contained within a T&R manual is a collective or individual training standard. This section explains each of the components that make up the T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R manual. Community-based T&R manuals may have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R manuals. The event condition, event title (behavior) and event standard should be read together as a grammatical sentence.

2. An example of a collective T&R event is provided in figure 1-3 and an example of an individual T&R event is provided in figure 1-4. Events shown in figures are for illustrative purposes only and are not actual T&R events.

XXXX-XXXX-####: Provide interior guard

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT #.#.#

EVALUATION CODED: YES/NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Text

CONDITION: Text

STANDARD: Text

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Event component.
2. Event component.
3. Event component.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. Reference
2. Reference
3. Reference

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTED:
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

  EQUIPMENT: XXX

MISCELLANEOUS: XXX

  ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-3. Example of a Collective T&R Event

XXXX-XXXX-####: Stand a sentry post

EVALUATION CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Text

MOS PERFORMING: ####, ####

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: XXX

CONDITION: Text

STANDARD: Text

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Event component.
2. Event component.
3. Event component.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. Reference
2. Reference
3. Reference

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTED:
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

INTERNAL SUPPORTING:
XXXX-XXXX-#### XXXX-XXXX-####

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

  EQUIPMENT: XXX

MISCELLANEOUS: XXX

  ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: XXX

Figure 1-4. Example of an Individual Event

1. Event Code. The event code is explained in paragraph 1005.

2. Title. The name of the event. The event title contains one action verb and one object.

3. Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded). Collective events categorize the capabilities that a given unit may be expected to perform. There are some collective events that the Marine Corps has determined that a unit MUST be able to perform, if that unit is to be considered fully ready for operations. These E-Coded events represent the irreducible minimum or the floor of readiness for a unit. These E-Coded events are derived from the training measures of effectiveness (MOE) for the METs for units that must report readiness in DRRS. It would seem intuitive that most E-Coded events would be for battalion sized units and higher since those are the units that report in DRRS. However, if the Marine Corps has determined that the readiness of a subordinate, supporting unit to accomplish a particular collective event is vital to the accomplishment of the supported unit's MET, then that lower echelon collective event is E-Coded.

4. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event in the judgment of the OccFld drafting the T&R manual, even if those events are not listed as MOE in a MET.

5. Sustainment Interval. It is critical to understand the intent of the sustainment interval so training time is not wasted with duplicated training. Sustainment interval is expressed in number of months. Most individual T&R events and many lower level collective events are never out of sustainment because they are either part of a Marine's daily routine, or are frequently executed within the sustainment interval. Sustainment interval is relevant when an individual or collective event is not observed and evaluated within the sustainment period, has atrophied, and therefore retraining and evaluation is required.

6. Billet/MOS. Each individual training event will contain a billet code and/or MOS that designates who is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed this manual and are listed for each event.

7. Grade. The grade field indicates the rank at which Marines are required to complete the event.

8. Description. This field allows T&R developers to include an explanation of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., engage fixed target with crew-served weapons. This is an optional field for individual events but is required for collective events. This field can be of great value guiding a formal school or FMF unit trying to discern the intent behind an event that might not be readily apparent.

9. Condition. Condition refers to the constraints that may affect event performance in a real-world environment. It indicates what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints

or conditions under which the task is to be performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.). When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated. The content of the condition should be included in the event on a "by exception" basis. If there exists an assumption regarding the conditions under which all or most of the events in the manual will be performed, then only those additional or exceptional items required should be listed in the condition. The common conditions under which all the events in a chapter will be executed will be listed as a separate paragraph at the beginning of the chapter.

10. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will be objective, quantifiable, and readily observable. Standards will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, completeness, time required, and sequencing the event is to be accomplished. These guidelines can be summarized in the acronym "ACTS" (Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence). In no cases will "per the reference" or "per/in accordance with commander's intent" be used as a stand-alone standard.

11. Event Components/Performance Steps. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and the proper sequence of execution of subordinate events. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

a. The event components and performance steps will be consciously written so that they may be employed as performance evaluation check lists by the FMF. They must be sequenced to demonstrate the building block approach to training.

b. Event components may be events one individual in the unit performs, events that small groups in the unit perform, or events involving the entire unit.

12. Chained Events. Enables unit leaders to effectively identify prerequisite, supporting, and supported events that ultimately support MCTs/METs. Supported events are chained to supporting events to enable the accomplishment of the supported event to standard and therefore are considered "chained". The completion of identified supported events can be utilized to update sustainment interval credit for supporting events, based on the assessment of the commander.

13. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative

requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

14. Supported Event. An event whose performance is inherently supported by the performance of one or more supporting events. A supported event will be classified as internal supported if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supported event that has been chained to an event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supported.

15. Supporting Event. An event whose performance inherently supports the performance of a supported event. A supporting event will be classified as internal supporting if it has been developed specifically for the community. A supporting event that has been chained to a community event from an external community T&R will be classified as external supporting.

16. Initial Training Setting. All individual events will designate the setting at which the skill is first taught, either formally, managed on the job training (MOJT) within the FMF, or via a distance learning product (DL).

17. References. The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. T&R manuals are designed to be a training outline, not to replicate or replace doctrinal publications, reference publications or technical manuals. References are key to developing detailed lesson plans, determining grading criteria, and ensuring standardization of training. For individual events only one authoritative reference is required.

18. Distance Learning Products. Distance learning products include: Individual multimedia instruction, computer-based training, MarineNet, etc. This notation is included when, in the opinion of the T&R manual group charter in consultation with the MAGTF T&R Standards Division representative, the event can be taught via one of these media vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

19. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

The ordnance requirements for one year of training for the events in the T&R will be aggregated into a table contained in an appendix to the T&R. The task analyst and the OccFld representatives will be careful not to "double count" ammunition that might be employed in the performance of collective and individual events that are chained.

20. Suitability of Simulation/Simulators/DL products. The following "Suitability and Sequence" codes listed in figure 1-5 have been developed to

communicate characteristics for employing simulations during training. Units of measure have been assigned based on the amount of time it takes a Marine or unit to train to task utilizing a particular simulator. Suitability and sequence codes are captured in the event title in a parenthetical remark, as well as within the simulation field of the T&R event. The simulation field also identifies the type of simulation, units of measure, and any other pertinent information.

Code	Requirement
L	The event can only be trained to standard in a Live environment. Any event assessed as "NO" for Simulatab1e was coded "L."
P	The event must be performed to standard in simulator as a PREREQUISITE to live fire qualification as per current doctrine, policy, or T&R manual.
S/L	Event must be trained to standard in simulation then live unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.
L/S	Event must be trained to standard in a live environment then simulation unless simulation capacity is not available, then live only training is appropriate.
S	Event can ONLY be conducted to standard and qualification in simulator.

Figure 1-5. Suitability and sequence codes

a. Training simulation capabilities offer an opportunity to build and sustain proficiency while achieving and/or maintaining certain economies. Commanders should take into consideration simulation tools as a matter of course when designing training.

b. Simulation Terms:

(1) Simulation: A model of a system animated discretely or continuously over a period of time. A simulation may be closed-loop (i.e., it executes based in initial inputs without human intervention), or it may be open-loop (i.e., human input to alter the variables in the system during execution is allowed). A simulation is an approximation of how the modeled system will behave over time. Simulations are constructed based on verified and validated mathematical models of actual systems. Simulations can be very simple or complex depending on the degree of fidelity and resolution needed to understand the behavior of a system.

(2) Simulator: A simulator is the physical apparatus employed as the interface for humans to interact with a model or observe its output. A simulator has input controls and outputs in the form of human sensory stimuli (visual, auditory, olfactory, tactile/haptic, and taste). For instance, some of the features of the vehicle cab (the seat, steering wheel, turn signals, accelerator pedal, brakes, and windshield) and projection screen. Both the vehicle cab and projection screen are the interface by which a human being interacts with the simulated environment of a driving a vehicle and observe the outputs of the mathematical models of vehicle dynamics.

(3) Model: A mathematical representation of the behavior (i.e., shows the behavior of projectiles, combat simulations, etc.) of a system at a distinct point in time.

(4) Live: Real people operates real systems to include both live people operating real platforms or systems on a training range and battle staffs from joint, component or service tactical headquarters using real world command and control systems.

(5) Virtual: Real people operating simulated systems. Virtual simulations inject humans-in-the-loop in a central role by exercising motor control skills (e.g., flying an air platform simulator, engaging targets in indoor simulated marksmanship trainer), decision skills, and/or communication skills.

(6) Constructive: Models and simulations that involve simulated people operating simulated systems (i.e., MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation). Real people make inputs to such simulations, but are not involved in determining the outcomes.

(7) Live, Virtual and Constructive (LVC) Training Environment: Defined by combining any of the three training domains LVC to create a common operational environment, by which units can interact across LVC domains as though they are physically located in the same operational environment.

(8) Distance Learning: Any instruction and evaluation provided through a variety of DL delivery systems (i.e., MarineNet) where the students and instructors are separated by time and/or location.

c. Figure 1-6 depicts an event title with simulation code and simulation and/or simulators that can be used, as displayed within a T&R event.

XXXX-XXX-XXXX: Call for indirect fire using the grid method (L/S)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	L/S	ODS	Marine Hours	12	Y

Figure 1-6. Example of simulation/simulators displayed within a T&R event

21. Miscellaneous

a. This field provides space for any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Units and formal learning centers are cautioned not to disregard this information or to consider the information of lesser importance than what is contained in other parts of the T&R event. Miscellaneous fields provide an opportunity for the drafters of the T&R event to communicate vital information that might not fit neatly into any other available field. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

1007. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)

1. The Marine Corps ground T&R program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage" as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. Combat readiness percentage is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. Unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called E-Coded Events. E-Coded events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. The CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

1008. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew, or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. E-Coded collective events are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. The MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has four E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: 75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP)/5 (total number of METS) = 65%

3. Combat readiness percentage is a valuable tool to assist commanders in readiness reporting by providing objective data to support and inform their subjective assessment.

1009. CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the FMF must be trained in chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) defense in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1010. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the FMF are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place, "current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on the availability of equipment and personnel.

1011. RISK MANAGEMENT (RM)

1. Risk management is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a tool to aid decision making used by Marines at all levels to increase effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of success. Risk management minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. All leaders and Marines will integrate RM in the planning process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the RM process will reduce mishaps, injuries, and damage they cause, thereby increasing both individual performance and unit readiness. Risk management assists the commander in avoiding unnecessary risk, determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, making an

informed decision to implement a course of action, identifying feasible and effective control measures, adjusting training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Marines/Sailors, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment.

3. Specifically, commanders are required to implement and document deliberate RM in the planning and execution of all training evolutions and activities. Furthermore, the authority to approve or accept risk assessment code (RAC) 1 or 2 hazards will not be delegated below lieutenant colonel (O5). Further guidance for RM is found in Marine Corps Order 3500.27_.

1012. IMPROVISED EXPLOSIVE TRAINING

1. Improvised explosive device (IED) threat impacts all elements of the MAGTF and all Marines regardless of MOS, location, or operational environment. The ability to effectively operate and survive in environments with an IED threat is critical to force protection, maintaining combat effectiveness, and mission accomplishment.

2. Per Marine Corps policy on organizing, training, and equipping for operations in an IED environment (MCO 3502.9), Marines must be capable of not only accomplishing their assigned mission, but also accomplishing their mission in environments with an IED threat. Counter-improvised explosive device (C-IED) training must be integrated into the unit training plan in order-to ensure personnel assigned to the FMF train and maintain proficiency in C-IED tactics, techniques, and procedures.

1013. AAV MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS. 1. Within the Assault Amphibian Community, Marines are required to demonstrate a high degree of physical strength to standard, in order to perform those regularly assigned, recurrent duties of each of the Assault Amphibian's military occupational specialties (MOSs).

2. This T&R Manual contains only AAV MOS-specific physical standards as the ACV does not currently have any approved standards, which must be demonstrated, in order to achieve MOS qualification. These MOS-specific physical standards have been identified throughout this T&R manual within the administrative instructions to the event.

3. Assessments for MOS-specific physical standards have been developed and are contained within Appendix F. These assessments provide Commanders reasonable assurance a Marine has the physical capacity to perform the regularly assigned and recurrent duties of the MOS.

4. These MOS-specific physical standards are not the sole requirement for MOS qualification.

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
AA MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST (METL)	2000	2-2
AA CORE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS	2001	2-2
AA MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS.	2002	2-2
AA BASELINE AND ADVANCED MET STANDARDS.	2003	2-3
AA BN CORE MET MATRIX	2004	2-3
MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION	2005	2-8

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. AA MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST (METL). The MET table lists the standardized core METs for units within the Assault Amphibian community.

2001. AA CORE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS

MCT 1.1.2	Provide Task-Organized Forces
MCT 1.6.1	Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4	Conduct Defensive Operations
MCT 1.12.1	Conduct Amphibious Operations
MCT 5.3.2	Establish Means for Command and Control

2002. AA MET-SUPPORTING E-CODED EVENTS

The AA MET-Supporting E-Coded Events table lists the E-Coded collective T&R events that support the core METs identified in table 2001. These E-Coded T&R events form the basis for unit readiness planning per reference (d), identifying subordinate collective and individual training events through the supporting/chained relationships described in each event.

MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces	
AA-C2-7002	Prepare for Deployment
AA-AMPH-6002	Support Amphibious Operations
AA-AMPH-5002	Support Amphibious Operations
AA-TAC-5003	Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)
AA-TAC-5006	Support Defensive Operations (S/L)
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	
AA-C2-7004	Command and Control Forces (S/L)
AA-LOG-7002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AA-LOG-6001	Conduct Tactical Logistic Operations (S/L)
AA-GNRY-5003	Conduct Gun Table XII (L)
AA-GNRY-4003	Conduct Gun Table IX (L)
AA-GNRY-3005	Conduct Gun Table VI (L)
AA-TAC-5003	Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations	
AA-C2-7004	Command and Control Forces (S/L)
AA-LOG-7002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AA-LOG-6001	Conduct Tactical Logistic Operations (S/L)
AA-GNRY-5003	Conduct Gun Table XII (L)
AA-GNRY-4003	Conduct Gun Table IX (L)
AA-GNRY-3005	Conduct Gun Table VI (L)
AA-TAC-5006	Support Defensive Operations (S/L)
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	
AA-C2-7004	Command and Control Forces (S/L)

AA-AMPH-6001	Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)
AA-AMPH-6002	Support Amphibious Operations
AA-AMPH-5002	Support Amphibious Operations
MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control	
AA-C2-7004	Command and Control Forces (S/L)
AA-C2-4001	Support Command Section Operations

2003. AA BASELINE AND ADVANCED MET STANDARDS

1. MET Assessment. Each MET has output standards for two levels of capability: "Baseline" and "Advanced".

a. Baseline Capability. The level of readiness expected from a unit, normally sustained through unit core training at home station and achieved without requiring a Deployment for Training (DFT), dedicated at-sea training, or external Marine Air-Ground Task Force (MAGTF) support.

Considerations for Baseline Capability:

- Sustainment training conducted at home station
- No external MAGTF support required
- No dedicated at-sea support required

b. Advanced Capability. The level of readiness required by a unit, expected to perform a critical role in a mission or Operational Plan (OPLAN). This level of readiness normally requires external MAGTF support, ship-to-shore movement, or a service-level or joint training exercise. Units designated for training to this level are normally selected through the force synchronization process.

Considerations for Advanced Capability:

- Training against an adversary force
- Training against an adversary force representing peer threat
- Training in a degraded and/or denied command and control environment
- Training that require external MAGTF support
- Deployment for Training (DFT)
- Unique environmental conditions (Cold Weather Operations)
- Ship-to-Shore movement
- At sea training
- Joint or Naval integration

2. Additional guidance for readiness reporting can be found in MCO 3000.13, Marine Corps Readiness Reporting.

2004. AA BN CORE MET MATRIX

MCT 1.1.2 Provide Task-Organized Forces		
Baseline Capability		Deploying elements capable of providing mechanized capability (amphib/offense/defense) to supported infantry unit(s)
	Type	**Measure**

Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 AA company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel (3d Only)
Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 MEU platoon manned to 100% of MEU T/O MOS18XX/21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel (3d, 2d)
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 AA company with 80% of AVs ready and available (3d Only)
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 MEU platoon with 100% of AVs ready and available (3d=2, 2d=1)
Baseline	**Training**	>=1 AA Co is trained to standard in the following training event: AA-AMPH-6002 Support Amphibious Operations (3d Only)
Baseline	**Training**	>=2 MEU Platoon is trained to standard in the following training event: (3d Only) 1. AA-AMPH-5002 Support Amphibious Operations 2 AA-TAC-5003 Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L) 3. AA-TAC-5006 Support Defensive Operations (S/L
Baseline	**Output**	Y/N 1 or more Assault Amphibian Platoon trained and ready for deployment (MEU Sustainment) (3d, 2d, MFR)
Baseline	**Output**	Y/N 1 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability (3d Only)
Advanced Capability		Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment
	Type	**Measure**
Advanced	**Training**	Y/N Deploying elements participated in an externally supported and evaluated exercise, including force-on-force training against an opposing force presenting peer-threat capabilities (SLTE or equivalent)
Advanced	**Output**	Y/N Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations		
Baseline Capability		Deploying elements capable of providing mechanized capability to support infantry Offensive operations.
	Type	**Measure**
Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 AA companies manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel (2d, 3d & MFR)

Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 H&S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 AA companies with 80% of AVs ready and available (2d, 3d & MFR)
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 H&S company with 80% of AVs ready and available
Baseline	**Training**	Y/N AA Bn is trained to standard in the following training events: 1. AA-LOG-7002 Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations 2. AA-C2-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L) 3. CIED-OPS-7001 Operate in Environments with an IED Threat
Baseline	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1.AA-LOG-6001 Conduct Tactical Logistics Operations (S/L) 2.CIED-OPS-6001 Operate in Environments with an IED Threat
Baseline	**Training**	Y/N AA PLT trained to standard in the following events 1.AA-GNRY-5003 Conduct Gun Table XII
Baseline	**Output**	Y/N Capable of supporting at least 1 Infantry battalion with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support offensive operations (2d, 3d, & MFR)
Advanced Capability		Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment
	Type	**Measure**
Advanced	**Training**	Y/N Deploying elements participated in an externally supported and evaluated exercise, including force-on-force training against an opposing force presenting peer-threat capabilities (SLTE or equivalent).
Advanced	**Output**	Y/N Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment.
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations		
Baseline Capability		Deploying elements capable of providing mechanized capability to support infantry Defensive operations.
	Type	**Measure**
Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 AA companies manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel (2d, 3d & MFR)

Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 H&S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 AA companies with 80% of AVs ready and available (2d, 3d & MFR)
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 H&S company with 80% of AVs ready and available
Baseline	**Training**	Y/N AA Bn is trained to standard in the following training events: 1.AA-LOG-7002 Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations 2.AA-C2-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)
Baseline	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1.AA-LOG-6001 Conduct Tactical Logistics Operations(S/L)
Baseline	**Training**	Y/N AA PLT trained to standard in the following events 1.AA-GNRY-5003 Conduct Gun Table XII
Baseline	**Output**	Y/N Capable of supporting at least 1 Infantry battalion with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support defensive operations (2d, 3d, & MFR)
Advanced Capability		Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment
	Type	**Measure**
Advanced	**Training**	Y/N Deploying elements participated in an externally supported and evaluated exercise, including force-on-force training against an opposing force presenting peer-threat capabilities (SLTE or equivalent).
Advanced	**Output**	Y/N Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment.
MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control		
Baseline Capability		Deploying elements capable of planning, coordination, and execution of amphibious operations.
	Type	**Measure**
Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 AA companies manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel (2d, 3d & MFR)
Baseline	**Personnel**	>=1 H&S company manned to 80% of T/O MOS 18XX/ 21XX/06XX/28XX/84XX billets with MOS-qualified, deployable personnel
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=1 AA companies with 80% of AVs ready and available (2d, 3d & MFR)

Baseline	**Equipment**	Y/N H&S company with 80% of AVs ready and available
Baseline	**Training**	Y/N AA Bn is trained to standard in the following training events: 1.AA-C2-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)
Baseline	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1.AA-AMPH-6002-Support Amphibious Operations 2.AA-AMPH-6001 Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)
Baseline	**Output**	>=1 Infantry battalion supported with assault amphibian mechanized capability to support amphibious operations (2d, 3d, & MFR)
Advanced Capability		Deploying elements conduct amphibious operations with embarked infantry, launched from amphibious shipping with the primary purpose of introducing a landing force ashore to accomplish assigned missions conducted in a contested/degraded C2 environment.
	Type	**Measure**
Advanced	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1. AA-AMPH-5002 Support Amphibious Assault
Advanced	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1.AA-AMPH-5003 Support Amphibious Raid
Advanced	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1.AA-AMPH-5004 Support an Amphibious Demonstration
Advanced	**Training**	>=1 AA Companies trained to standard in the following events: (2d, 3d, & MFR) 1.AA-AMPH-5005 Support an Amphibious Withdrawal
Advanced	**Output**	Deploying elements conduct amphibious operations with embarked infantry, launched from amphibious shipping with the primary purpose of introducing a landing force ashore to accomplish assigned missions conducted in a contested/degraded C2 environment.
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations		
Baseline Capability		Provide platform and capability for establishing and maintaining tactical control of forces during amphibious and mechanized operations.
	Type	**Measure**
Baseline	**Personnel**	>=8 AV Crews manned with qualified, deployable personnel.
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=4 AV ready and available.
Baseline	**Equipment**	>=4 AV command variant ready and available
Baseline	**Training**	Y/N AA Bn trained to standard in: 1.AA-C2-7004 Command and Control Forces (S/L)

Baseline	**Training**	>=8 AA Crews trained to standard in the following events: 1.AA-C2-4001 Support Command Section Operations
Baseline	**Output**	Y/N Capable of providing >=2 maneuver headquarters platforms for establishing and maintaining tactical control of forces during amphibious and mechanized operations.
Advanced Capability		Provided platform for establishing and maintaining tactical control of forces during amphibious and mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment.
	Type	**Measure**
Advanced	**Training**	Y/N Deploying elements participated in an externally supported and evaluated exercise, including force-on-force training against an opposing force presenting peer-threat capabilities (SLTE or equivalent).
Advanced	**Output**	Y/N Deploying elements capable of supporting integrated mechanized operations against a peer adversary in complex terrain (urban / mountain / jungle) in a contested/degraded C2 environment.

2005. MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION

Below are the descriptions of each Marine Corps Task assigned to the AA community.

MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces. The Marine Corps organizes its operational forces as Marine Corps components and as MAGTFs to provide task-organized, self-sustaining, multipurpose forces to the joint force or naval expeditionary force. These uniquely organized Marine Corps forces can respond to a wide range of operational and tactical missions and tasks, providing an unmatched combination of deployment and employment options. This task includes prepositioning operations. (JP 1, 0-2, 3-0, MCDP 1-0, MCWP 3-33.7, MCRP 3-33.7A, MCO 3104.1)

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations. Take the initiative, gain freedom of action to allow swift transition from one action to another and to put the enemy at risk throughout the depth and space of the battlespace. Defeat, destroy or neutralize the enemy force by taking the fight to the enemy in such a way as to achieve victory at least cost. (JP 3-0, MCDP 1-0, MCWP 3-1)

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations. Take action to defeat an enemy attack. Buy time, to hold a piece of key terrain, to facilitate other operations, to preoccupy the enemy in one area so friendly forces can attack him in another, or to erode enemy resources at a rapid rate while reinforcing friendly operations. (JP 3-0, MCDP 1-0)

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations. To conduct a military operation launched from the sea by an amphibious force, embarked in ships or craft with the primary purpose of introducing a landing force ashore to accomplish the assigned mission. Types of amphibious operations include assaults, withdrawals, demonstrations, raids, and other amphibious operations in a

permissive, uncertain, or hostile environment. (JP 1-02, JP 3-02, MCDP 1-0, MCDP 3, MCWP 4-11.8)

MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control. To establish and provide controls and procedures for command and tactical movement of forces in a way that permits a Commander to move his force quickly, securely, and efficiently. To take into account the size of units and related time and space factors. To pass on multiple routes at a designated speed, organized in serial march units; establish jamming teams and liaison parties; and move tactical command post before main body to synchronize and coordinate movement, etc. Control is established to ensure the Commander flexibility to deploy his force as necessary for tactical purposes. This task includes prepositioning operations. (JP 1, 3-0, 3-01.4, 3-02, 3-02.1, 3-03, 3-05, 3-09, MCDP 1-0, MCRP 3-11.1A, MCWP 3-40.3, FMFM 2-7, NDP 1, 5, NWP 3-21, NWP 3-01.1, 3-09.11M, 3-56, 5-01)

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

BATTALION & COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING	3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	3002	3-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	3003	3-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3004	3-3
BATTALION AND COMPANY LEVEL EVENTS	3005	3-4

CHAPTER 3

BATTALION & COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion and Company-level Assault Amphibian unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies METs and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

3001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AA" indicating that the event is for units in the AA Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations
COND - Conditioning
LOG - Logistics
C2 - Command and Control
TAC - Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Battalion. The mission of the Assault Amphibian Battalion is to conduct amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the ground combat element (GCE) with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. The Assault Amphibian Battalion provides the GCE with the general support lift, staff expertise, and command and control assets to plan and execute amphibious forcible entry and

subsequent mechanized operations ashore. The Assault Amphibian Battalion has units of scalable capability, task organized to support each echelon of the GCE from company to regiment. The Battalion is comprised of subordinate Assault Amphibian Companies and a Headquarters and Service company. The Assault Amphibian Battalion augments the Assault Amphibian Company's organic logistics capability by providing personnel, medical, resupply, and overflow second and third echelon maintenance.

a. Provide Task-Organized Forces.
b. Conduct Offensive Operations.
c. Conduct Defensive Operations.
d. Conduct Amphibious Operations.
e. Establish Means to Command and Control
f. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Company. The mission of the Assault Amphibian Company is to conduct amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the GCE with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. The Assault Amphibian Company provides the GCE with the general support lift, staff expertise, and command and control assets to plan and execute amphibious forcible entry and subsequent mechanized operations ashore. The Assault Amphibian Company has units of scalable capability, task organized to support echelons of the GCE from company to battalion. The Company Commander functions as a special staff officer to the supported unit in Amphibious Vehicle (AV) employment in addition to commanding the company.

a. Provide Task-Organized Forces.
b. Conduct Offensive Operations.
c. Conduct Defensive Operations.
d. Conduct Amphibious Operations.
e. Establish Means to Command and Control
f. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

3. Assault Amphibian Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company. The mission of the Headquarters and Service Company is to provide the Battalion Commander the means to train, maintain, prepare and sustain subordinate units in order to support the GCE with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. Through its subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S Company provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply and other service support functions to the AA battalion.

a. Provide Task-Organized Forces.
b. Conduct Offensive Operations.
c. Conduct Defensive Operations.
d. Conduct Amphibious Operations.
e. Establish Means to Command and Control
f. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
7000 Level Events			
AA-AMPH-7001	NO	Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)	3-4
AA-C2-7001	NO	Provide Alert Forces	3-6

AA-C2-7002	YES	Prepare for Deployment	3-6
AA-C2-7003	NO	Plan for Operations (S/L)	3-7
AA-C2-7004	YES	Command and Control Forces (S/L)	3-9
AA-C2-7005	NO	Manage Unit Training and Readiness	3-10
AA-COND-7001	NO	Conduct a Forced March	3-11
AA-LOG-7001	NO	Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations	3-12
AA-LOG-7002	YES	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations	3-13
6000 Level Events			
AA-AMPH-6001	YES	Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)	3-14
AA-AMPH-6002	YES	Support Amphibious Operations	3-16
AA-C2-6001	NO	Manage Unit Training and Readiness	3-17
AA-C2-6002	NO	Plan for Operations (S/L)	3-18
AA-C2-6003	NO	Prepare for Deployment	3-20
AA-LOG-6001	YES	Conduct Tactical Logistics Operations (S/L)	3-20
AA-TAC-6001	NO	Support Offensive Operations (S/L)	3-23
AA-TAC-6002	NO	Support Defensive Operations (S/L)	3-24
AA-TAC-6003	NO	Support a Retrograde	3-25

3005. BATTALION AND COMPANY LEVEL EVENTS

AA-AMPH-7001: Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: During planning for amphibious operations, the AA unit leader is a special staff officer to the GCE commander under the staff cognizance of the operations officer. As special staff officer to the GCE commander, the AA unit leader deals with matters pertaining to employment of the supported unit's AVs in the conduct of amphibious operations and the subsequent operations ashore. The AA unit leader's responsibilities are varied but must include providing estimates of supportability. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-7)

CONDITION: Given a planning directive/warning order.

STANDARD: To advise support matters pertaining to employment of the supported unit's AVs in the conduct of amphibious operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-7)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Recommend Landing Beach/Landing Area for Commander Landing Force/Commander Amphibious Task Force approval.
3. Interpret intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance, to include hydrographic surveys.
4. Assist in the integration of the landing plan with the scheme of maneuver and supporting plans.

5. Assist in developing the operation plan, embarkation plan, debarkation plan and landing plan.
6. Provide input for the development of the approach schedule.
7. Provide embarkation data.
8. Assist in production of serial assignment tables and Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT) documents.
9. Advise conduct of rehearsals, inspections and unit brief-backs.
10. Coordinate and liaise with Navy and Marine planning staffs.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. MCRP 3-10A.1 Marine Infantry Battalion
5. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
6. MCTP 13-10M Amphibious Embarkation
7. NTTP 3-02.2M/MCWP 3-31.6 Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations
8. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
9. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations
10. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
11. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
12. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-6001	AA-C2-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	8	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-C2-7001: Provide Alert Forces

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The mission of the AA battalion is to conduct amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the ground combat element with maneuver, fires, force protection, and command and control. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 1, p. 1-1)

CONDITION: Given an order from higher headquarters and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To provide task-organized forces in order to transport assault elements, selected equipment, and supplies ashore in mechanized ship-to-shore movement, and conduct other combat support operations.(MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles, Ch. 1, p. 1-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Review the concept of operations/operations plan to determine specific transportation requirements.
2. Identify Time-Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD) requirements to higher headquarters.
3. Formulate an embarkation plan with level 4 data (weight and dimensions).
4. Forecast lift requirements.
5. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
6. Submit transportation requirements to higher headquarters.
7. Disseminate a movement schedule to the appropriate units.
8. Supervise embarkation/movement to staging area.
9. Support deployment and distribution planning through the use of automated information systems.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
2. MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
3. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
4. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-C2-6002

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

AA-C2-7002: Prepare for Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Forward-deployed forces must be prepared to quickly respond to either quell the crisis or set conditions for the introduction of a larger force.(MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 4, p. 4-16)

CONDITION: Given a task-organized battalion.

STANDARD: To provide a unit that is staffed, organized, trained, and equipped to operate inside the MAGTF. (MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 1, p. 1-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Identify/Stabilize personnel.
3. Identify logistical requirements.
4. Conduct pre-deployment training.
5. Conduct pre/post personnel turnover inspections.
6. Conduct pre/post deployment health services.
7. Conduct pre/post equipment turnover inspections.
8. As required, identify ADVON/RBE leaders and personnel.
9. Transfer administrative control to gaining unit.
10. Transfer equipment to gaining unit.
11. Transfer operational control to gaining unit.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
2. MCRP 1-10.1 Organization of the United States Marine Corps
3. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
4. MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
5. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-C2-6002

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

AA-C2-7003: Plan for Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The Marine Corps doctrinal philosophy of maneuver warfare describes planning as an essential part of the broader field of command and control. (MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process, Ch. 1 p. 1-1)

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters operation order, commander's guidance, and a battle staff.

STANDARD: To coordinate among the commander, the staff, and subordinate commanders regarding the nature of a given problem and the options for solving it. (MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process, Ch. 1, p. 1-4)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine planning process.
2. Determine time available.
3. Establish timeline for planning and preparation.
4. Issue warning order.
5. Conduct operational planning team (OPT).
6. Implement cultural considerations into mission planning.
7. Create orders.
8. Issue orders.
9. Implement feedback mechanisms.
10. Coordinate planning with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. ADP 1-02 Terms and Military Symbols
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCDP 5 Planning
5. MCDP 6 Command and Control

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803AAV-C2-1006 1803ACV-C2-1006 1833AAV-C2-2006
1833AAV-C2-2007 1833ACV-C2-2004 1833ACV-C2-2005
AA-C2-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	16	Y

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

AA-C2-7004: Command and Control Forces (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The Command and control process enables the commander to exercise command across the breadth of the forces. It provides the means for the commander to form an understanding of the situation, decide what action is required, transmit instructions to subordinate commanders, monitor execution of instructions, and assess the results of the action. (MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 1, p. 1-14)

CONDITION: Given Command and control assets, support equipment, and a Division to support with command relationship.

STANDARD: To coordinate planning and execution of maneuver, fire support coordination, intelligence operations, aviation support, and logistics. (MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 4, p. 4-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish a Command Post.
2. Organize staff sections into mobile echelons to support personnel, battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR), transportation, engineering, and health services/casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) operations.
3. Establish Jump procedures.
4. Advise best position of mobile echelons for effective C2, mobility and survivability.
5. Direct/coordinate current operations.
6. Track Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIRs).
7. Maintain status of available resources.
8. Assist fire support planning as required.
9. Augment Administration and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC).
10. Communicate with Higher, Adjacent, Subordinate, and Supporting (HASS) units.

11. Provide mission command systems.
12. Assist in maintaining continuity of operations as well as the Common Operational Picture (COP).
13. Participate in local security as required.
14. Make recommendations to the commander.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1005	1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-2001
1803ACV-C2-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001	1803ACV-TAC-2001
1833AAV-C2-2004	1833AAV-TAC-2003	1833ACV-TAC-2003
AA-C2-6002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	20	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. At the time of publishing this manual, the AA community did not have the ACV-Command vehicle or a Technical Manual (TM) for this vehicle. When the AA community acquires the ACV-C model with TM this event will be adjusted to include new TM and internal supporting event (1833ACV-C2-2004-Prepare Command Communications Suite) as a change to the manual.

AA-C2-7005: Manage Unit Training and Readiness

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Traditional versatility and adaptability are being challenged by demands for a more frugal approach to operational excellence. To confront this challenge effectively, Marine Corps training programs must pursue warfighting requirements while meeting personnel and fiscal requirement. (MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide, Ch.2, p. 2-1)

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and Commander's Training Guidance.

STANDARD: To provide training to maximize results and focus priorities of the unit on its wartime mission. (MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide, Ch.2, Overview, Ch. 2, p. 2-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Develop METL.
2. Identify collective training standards.
3. Define unit proficiency standards.
4. Develop the training strategy.
5. Develop the Commander's Training Guidance.
6. Develop a short/mid/long-range training plan.
7. Develop weekly training schedules.
8. Design/Develop field exercises.
9. Coordinate unit training.
10. Develop training materials.
11. Develop assessment materials.
12. Conduct risk assessment.
13. Conduct training.
14. Conduct formal/informal training evaluations.
15. Conduct after action reviews.
16. Assess unit Mission Essential Task (MET) proficiency.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
2. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-TRNG-1001	1803AAV-TRNG-2001	1803ACV-TRNG-1001
1803ACV-TRNG-2001	1833AAV-TRNG-2007	1833ACV-TRNG-2007
AA-C2-6001		

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

AA-COND-7001: Conduct a Forced March

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2 Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Non-load bearing units must incorporate the execution of this event into their respective unit Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation (MCCRE) within the following parameters: Forced march will be integrated as part of the MCCRE, but may be executed as a stand-alone event. Design of the integration shall be directed by the Marine Division Commander. (MCO 3501.1_ Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation (MCCRE), p. 6)

CONDITION: Given a unit carrying a fighting load of 55 pounds (+/- 10%) with organic weapons, a 15 Kilometer route and mission essential equipment.

STANDARD: To arrive at destination in a time limit of 4 hours, with equipment and 95% of the force remaining mission capable. (MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat, Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine unit capabilities and limitations.
2. Ensure proper execution of a progressive unit hike program.
3. Ensure proper execution of Pre-Combat Checks (PCCs) and Pre-Combat Inspections (PCIs).
4. Execute forced march.
5. Conduct follow-on actions.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: ATP 3-21.18 Foot Marches

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3501.1_ Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation (MCCRE)
2. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat
5. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
6. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
7. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
1803AAV-COND-2001 1803ACV-COND-2001 1833AAV-COND-2001
1833ACV-COND-2001

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This foot movement can be incorporated into tactical training scenarios or executed as a stand-alone event.

2. The defined loads and weights in the tables provided in NAVMC 3500.44_ Infantry Training & Readiness Manual, Appendix E are to be used in training as a bench mark standard as they reflect the most likely sets of items, and their associated weight, carried in actual combat operations. In the event that the items in the table are not available for training, items of similar weight may be substituted in order to meet the event standard. The unit commander still retains the authority to modify the actual load requirements based on their assessment of the situation.

AA-LOG-7001: Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: At the AA battalion level, logistics is defined as the science of planning and effecting the development, deployment, and sustainability of the battalion's resources in support of the mission. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)Ch. 6, p. 6-1)

CONDITION: Given material and consumables required to support the military effort.

STANDARD: To sustain and maintain the necessary level of operational activity to achieve military objectives. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)Ch. 6, p. 6-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop concept of supply and sustainment.
2. Identify shortfalls and acceptable alternatives.
3. Task-organize Battalion Level Logistics.
4. Develop transportation, logistics packages and movement plans.
5. Position consideration.
6. Conduct site survey.
7. Occupy Battalion Logistical Support Area.
8. Develop an integrated and coordinated security plan.
9. Establish operations center.
10. Establish maintenance facility.
11. Conduct recovery, replacement and evacuation operations.
12. Establish health, food and religious services.
13. Coordinate tactical logistics for the purpose of sustaining forces. Ensuring continuous support to supported unit.
14. Prepare for follow-on operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-LOG-6001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

AA-LOG-7002: Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR) restores the minimum essential combat capabilities necessary to support a specific combat mission or to enable the equipment to self-recover. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 6, p. 6-7)

CONDITION: Given a scenario, equipment and personnel, and a support area.

STANDARD: To rapidly return disabled equipment to the operational commander by expediently fixing, bypassing or replacing components. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 6, p. 6-7)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
2. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets.
3. Recover and repair equipment.
4. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
5. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
2. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-LOG-6001

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-6001: Assist in Amphibious Staff Planning (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: During planning for amphibious operations, the AA unit leader is a special staff officer to the GCE commander under the staff cognizance of the operations officer. As special staff officer to the GCE commander, the AA unit leader deals with matters pertaining to employment of the supported unit's AVs in the conduct of amphibious operations and the subsequent operations ashore. The AA unit leader's responsibilities are varied but must include providing estimates of supportability. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-7)

CONDITION: Given a planning directive/warning order.

STANDARD: To advise support matters pertaining to employment of the supported unit's AVs in the conduct of amphibious operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-7)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assist/advise the supported unit throughout the planning process.
2. Formulate information requirements and recommend Intelligence Requirements (IRs) for the commander.
3. Coordinate and liaise with Navy and Marine planning staffs.

4. Assist with developing the landing plan, including landing craft surf and sea considerations.
5. Assist with developing the Landing Craft And Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT), Serial Assignment Tables, and the embarkation plan.
   Plan for maneuver and sustainment ashore.
   Coordinate safety boat support.
6. Conduct rehearsals, inspections, and unit brief-backs.
   Conduct operational risk management.
   Attend pre-sail confirmation brief with naval and supported unit leadership.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
10. MCDP 5 Planning

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-7001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-SUPT-2001	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-SUPT-2001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	MTWS	Unit Hours	8	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-6002: Support Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: There are five principal types of amphibious operations the assault, raid, demonstration, withdrawal, and other operations. Various capabilities and functions of AVs provide support for these amphibious operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

CONDITION: Given a mission, commander's intent, amphibious shipping, and a requirement to conduct one static and two underway launches.

STANDARD: To establish a force on shore. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping.
3. Conduct rehearsals.
4. Execute ship-to-shore movement.
5. Assist in phasing control ashore.
6. Execute scheme of maneuver.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-4004	AA-AMPH-4005	AA-AMPH-4006
AA-AMPH-4007	AA-AMPH-4008	AA-AMPH-5001
AA-AMPH-5002	AA-AMPH-5003	AA-AMPH-5004
AA-AMPH-5005	AA-AMPH-5006	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-C2-6001: Manage Unit Training and Readiness

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Commanders and their staffs manage unit training along with other programs to ensure that they are mutually supporting. All command programs must work together to accomplish a common set of goals (MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide, Ch. 2, p. 2-3)

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and Commanders Training Guidance.

STANDARD: To provide needed training to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate performance-oriented training (MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide, Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine unit proficiency.
2. Develop short/mid/long-range training plan in concert with battalion annual training plan/TEEP.
3. Coordinate unit training.
4. Develop, procure, and/or request training materials.

5. Conduct risk management.
6. Publish planned training events.
7. Conduct training.
8. Conduct evaluation of training.
9. Conduct/submit after action reviews.
10. Conduct training assessment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
2. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-C2-7005

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-TRNG-1001	1803AAV-TRNG-1002	1803AAV-TRNG-2001
1803AAV-TRNG-2002	1803ACV-TRNG-1001	1803ACV-TRNG-1002
1803ACV-TRNG-2001	1803ACV-TRNG-2002	1833AAV-TRNG-2007
1833AAV-TRNG-2008	1833AAV-TRNG-2009	1833ACV-TRNG-2007
1833ACV-TRNG-2008	1833ACV-TRNG-2009	

AA-C2-6002: Plan for Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations	MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Supported unit commanders and their staffs must continually synchronize and integrate operations. (MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process, Ch. 1, p. 1-4)

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters operation order, commander's guidance, and key staff.

STANDARD: To prepare the unit for combat missions. (MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process, Ch. 1, p. 1-4)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct problem framing.
2. Determine planning process.
3. Determine time available.
4. Establish timeline for planning and preparation.
5. Issue warning order.
6. Implement cultural considerations into mission planning.

7. Create orders.
8. Issue orders.
9. Implement feedback mechanisms.
10. Coordinate planning with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. ADP 1-02 Terms and Military Symbols
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCDP 5 Planning
5. MCDP 6 Command and Control

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-C2-7003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-C2-5001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

AA-C2-6003: Prepare for Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Forward-deployed forces must be prepared to quickly respond to either quell the crisis or set conditions for the introduction of a larger force.(MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 4, p. 4-16)

CONDITION: Given a task-organized company.

STANDARD: To provide a unit that is staffed, organized, trained, and equipped to operate inside the MAGTF. (MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 1, p. 1-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Identify/Stabilize personnel.
3. Identify logistical requirements.
4. Conduct pre-deployment training.
5. Conduct pre/post personnel turnover inspections.
6. Conduct pre/post deployment health services.
7. Conduct pre/post equipment turnover inspections.
8. As required, identify ADVON/RBE leaders and personnel.
9. Transfer administrative control to gaining unit.
10. Transfer equipment to gaining unit.
11. Transfer operational control to gaining unit.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
2. MCRP 1-10.1 Organization of the United States Marine Corps
3. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
4. MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
5. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-C2-7002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-C2-5002

AA-LOG-6001: Conduct Tactical Logistics Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: An area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions; to distribute supplies; to return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation, or disposal; and to treat, evacuate, and track casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption of operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)Ch. 6, p. 6-1)

CONDITION: Given an AA unit engaged in tactical operations, HHQ order, commander's guidance and appropriate resources.

STANDARD: To sustain and maintain the necessary level of operational activity to achieve military objectives. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 6, p. 6-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Plan:
    1. Consider the six functions of tactical logistics.
    2. Review HHQ operations order(s) and respective Annex D.
    3. Review available resources to support tactical situation.
        a. Review Equipment Density List (EDL).
        b. Review Manning Document for supportability.
        c. Identify shortfalls.
2. Prepare:
    1. Issue orders.
    2. Task organize company trains to support HHQ scheme of maneuver.
    3. Organize recovery and/or battle damage and repair assets.
    4. Install litter kit(s), as required.
    5. Establish security plan for company assembly area and trains.
    6. Determine method of replenishment.
3. Execute:
    1. Augment quartering party to find a suitable location for assembly area.
    2. Conduct quartering party actions.
    3. Establish/augment local security.
    4. Establish observation post.
    5. Establish wire communications as needed.
    6. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
    7. Cover/conceal positions.
    8. Control movement of company trains in conjunction with the concept of operations and tactical situation.
    9. Establish security plan for company trains.
    10. Determine method of replenishment.
    11. Identify circumstance, type, and location of equipment to be recovered/repaired.
    12. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets.
    13. Repair, recover, or remove equipment from the battlefield.
    14. When directed, destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
4. Execute cont:
    15. Evacuate friendly and enemy Wounded In Action (WIA) and Killed In Action (KIA) to Casualty Collection Point (CCP), while taking reasonable measures to safeguard casualties.
    16. Weapons, serialized gear, and Personnel Protective Equipment (PPE) are handled and accounted for in accordance with unit Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs).
    17. Wounded enemy combatants are safeguarded/escorted as required.
    18. Conduct coordination with higher headquarters for evacuation.
    19. In accordance with SOPs, civilian casualties are either evacuated through military system, or coordination is conducted for treatment by civilian medical personnel/facilities.
5. Assess:
    1. Submit appropriate combat reports to HHQ
    2. Process logistics requests from Higher, adjacent and subordinate units.
    3. Track material readiness for all company assets both attached and/or detached.

4. Maintain a Common Tactical Picture (CTP) for all forces attached and/or detached.
5. Maintain appropriate casualty tracking.
6. Submit Personnel Casualty Reports (PCR), as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion
3. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
4. MCRP 3-10A.1 Marine Infantry Battalion
5. MCRP 3-40A.7 Patient Movement
6. MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid
7. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
8. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
9. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
10. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations
11. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
12. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
13. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AA-LOG-7001 AA-LOG-7002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:
AA-LOG-5001 AA-LOG-5002 AA-LOG-5003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	CCS	Marine Hours	8	Y

AA-TAC-6001: Support Offensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: When the AA company is placed in support of another organization, its commander becomes a special staff officer to the supported unit commander. The supported unit and AA units are task-organized to create a single tactical combat unit, and work together to achieve unity of command and effort according to the supported unit commander's concept of operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 1, p. 1-8)

CONDITION: Given an infantry unit, an order from higher headquarters, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To achieve the effects of combined arms. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 4, p. 4-12)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Define command relationship.
2. Advise supported unit commander/S3 on AA unit employment.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Task-organize forces.
5. Prepare for combat (Pre-combat Checks/Pre-combat Inspections).
6. Support maneuver forces.
7. Support organic logistical requirements.
8. Evacuate casualties, as necessary.
9. Consolidate and re-organize upon mission completion.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-90.1 Armor and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCRP 3-10A.1 Marine Infantry Battalion
5. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

AA-TAC-5001	AA-TAC-5002	AA-TAC-5003
AA-TAC-5004	AA-TAC-5005	AA-TAC-5007
AA-TAC-5008	AA-TAC-5009	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-6002: Support Defensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The basic defense fundamentals that must be considered include maneuver, preparation, concentration of combat power, flexibility, offensive actions, use of terrain, security, mutual support, defense in depth, as well as fire support and obstacle plans. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 5, p. 5-1)

CONDITION: Given an infantry unit, an order from higher headquarters, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To force the attacker to reach his culminating point without achieving his objectives and create the opportunity to shift to the offense in accordance with the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Task-organize AA unit.
3. Identify and mark primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
4. Conduct work in accordance with priorities and timeline (SAFE - Security, Automatic Weapons, Fields of Fire, Entrenchment).
5. Identify sectors of fire/fields of fire.
6. Advise on effective employment of weapons systems, safety, and geometry of fires.
7. Produce and submit fire plan sketch in support of supporting unit defensive plan.
8. Rehearse defensive battle drills.
9. Entrench and improve positions/lines of communication, as necessary.
10. Establish alert postures.
11. Conduct continuing actions.
12. Send/receive reports as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. ATP 3-90.1 Armor and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

AA-TAC-5001	AA-TAC-5002	AA-TAC-5004
AA-TAC-5006	AA-TAC-5007	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	4	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-6003: Support a Retrograde

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The retrograde is a form of defensive method that involves organized movement away from the enemy. The enemy may force these operations or a commander may execute them voluntarily. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 7, p. 7-10)

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To conduct an organized movement away from the enemy. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 7, p. 7-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Determine method of retrograde.
3. Plan for alternate or successive delaying actions as required.
4. Break contact, if necessary, from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Adhere to tactical control measures.
7. Maintain security.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-TAC-5007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	4000	4-2
EVENT CODING	4001	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	4002	4-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	4003	4-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS	4004	4-3
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	4005	4-3

CHAPTER 4

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon-level Assault Amphibian unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

4001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AA" indicating that the event is for units in the AA Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations	GNRY - Gunnery
LOG - Logistics	TAC - Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Platoon. The mission of the AA platoon is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The platoon is led by the AA Platoon Commander who directly advises the infantry Company Commander on AV employment.

a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
b. Conduct amphibious operations.
c. Conduct mechanized operations.

d. Conduct offensive operations.
e. Conduct defensive operations.
f. Employ AA platoon fires.
g. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

4004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
5000 Level Events			
AA-AMPH-5001	NO	Prepare for Amphibious Operations	4-3
AA-AMPH-5002	YES	Support Amphibious Operations	4-5
AA-AMPH-5003	NO	Support an Amphibious Assault	4-6
AA-AMPH-5004	NO	Support an Amphibious Raid	4-8
AA-AMPH-5005	NO	Support an Amphibious Demonstration	4-9
AA-AMPH-5006	NO	Support an Amphibious Withdrawal	4-11
AA-C2-5001	NO	Plan for Operations (S/L)	4-12
AA-C2-5002	NO	Prepare for Deployment	4-14
AA-GNRY-5001	NO	Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)	4-15
AA-GNRY-5002	NO	Conduct Gun Table XI	4-16
AA-GNRY-5003	YES	Conduct Gun Table XII	4-17
AA-LOG-5001	NO	Conduct Resupply	4-18
AA-LOG-5002	NO	Conduct Recovery Operations	4-19
AA-LOG-5003	NO	Support Casualty Evacuation Operations	4-20
AA-TAC-5001	NO	Conduct an Action Drill	4-22
AA-TAC-5002	NO	Conduct a Passage of Lines	4-23
AA-TAC-5003	YES	Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)	4-24
AA-TAC-5004	NO	Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization	4-25
AA-TAC-5005	NO	Support a Movement to Contact (S/L)	4-26
AA-TAC-5006	YES	Support Defensive Operations (S/L)	4-28
AA-TAC-5007	NO	Support a Retrograde (S/L)	4-30
AA-TAC-5008	NO	Support Shore-to-Shore Operations (S/L)	4-31
AA-TAC-5009	NO	Support Riverine Operations (S/L)	4-32

4005. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AA-AMPH-5001: Prepare for Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Advanced planning will be conducted to ensure that both Naval and Marine forces understand sequence of events, training objectives, operational procedures, and communication procedures to be used. A maximum effort is made to prepare personnel and machines for combat considering both AA and supported unit SOPs. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-17)

CONDITION: Given an AA platoon and operation order or warning order.

STANDARD: To conduct all tasks prior to water operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-17)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Ensure personnel are Water Survival and Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET) qualified.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Task-organize.
4. Conduct planning.
5. Assist in amphibious staff planning.
6. Develop concept of support and load plans as required.
7. Produce necessary documents.
8. Integrate plans with supported and adjacent units.
9. Complete pre-water operations checks and inspections.
10. Determine Modified Surf Index (MSI) and Sea State.
11. Identify designated Recovery Team(s) (RT) and safety boats.
12. Issue personal flotation devices (PFD) with supplemental emergency breathing devices (SEBD).
13. Deliver Embarked Troop Brief (ETB).
14. Conduct emergency procedure rehearsals.
15. Submit personnel manifests.
16. Verify positive radio communication with all participating units.
17. Conduct Splash Team checks.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1002
1833AAV-AMPH-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1002	1833ACV-AMPH-2001
AA-AMPH-3001	AA-AMPH-4002	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY

L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-5002: Support Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces	MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: There are five principal types of amphibious operations the assault, raid, demonstration, withdrawal, and other operations. Various capabilities and functions of AVs provide support for these amphibious operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

CONDITION: Given a mission, commander's intent, amphibious shipping, and a requirement to conduct one static and two underway launches.

STANDARD: To establish a force on shore. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Attend pre-sail confirmation brief with naval and supported unit leadership.
3. Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping.
4. Refuel as necessary.
5. Conduct rehearsals.
6. Conduct debarkation of amphibious shipping.
7. Execute ship-to-shore movement.
8. Assist in phasing control ashore.
9. Execute scheme of maneuver.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1004	1803ACV-AMPH-1004	1833AAV-AMPH-2003
1833ACV-AMPH-2003	AA-AMPH-4001	AA-AMPH-4003
AA-AMPH-5001		

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1006	1803ACV-AMPH-1006	1833AAV-AMPH-1006
1833ACV-AMPH-1007	AA-AMPH-3004	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. This event should be trained to standard without embarked troops before conducting with embarked troops and/or supporting infantry T&R tasks.

AA-AMPH-5003: Support an Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The amphibious assault is the most important type of amphibious operation. AA unit leaders maintain tactical control of AVs and embarked troops during waterborne movement. The CATF accomplishes the movement of the landing force to the beach through the AA unit and naval elements. Landing ships, helicopters, and AVs may be employed in this mission. The waterborne formations of AVs in the assault are similar to those of infantry formations. AVs low silhouette and armored hull make them very survivable against direct and indirect fire weapons if detected in the assault. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-17)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To establish a force on a shore for the immediate execution of inland maneuver (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Coordinate with Navy and Marine planning staffs.
2. Conduct planning and task organize.
3. Conduct ship-to-objective maneuver.
4. Conduct actions on the objective.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5001	AA-AMPH-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001

1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-TAC-2004	1833AAV-VOPS-1009
1833ACV-TAC-2004	1833ACV-TAC-2004	AA-AMPH-3004
AA-AMPH-4002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-5004: Support an Amphibious Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: An amphibious raid is a landing from the sea involving swift incursion into hostile territory for a specified purpose that is followed by a planned withdrawal. Raid forces consist of individuals or unit(s) with the capabilities or skills required to accomplish the mission. Raid forces should be as small as possible to maximize stealth and speed and to achieve (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To land from the sea to inflict loss or damage, secure information, create a diversion, or capture or evacuate individuals/material followed by a planned withdrawal. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task-organize for the raid.
2. Conduct ship to shore maneuver.
3. Maneuver security element into designated positions.
4. Maneuver support element to over-watch position.
5. Maneuver assault element to designated assault position.
6. Conduct actions on objective.
7. Execute planned withdrawal.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5001	AA-AMPH-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-TAC-2004
1833ACV-SUPT-2001	AA-AMPH-3004	AA-AMPH-4001
AA-AMPH-4002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-5005: Support an Amphibious Demonstration

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The amphibious demonstration is conducted to deceive the enemy by a show of force with the expectation of deluding the enemy into a course of action unfavorable to them. The effectiveness of a demonstration increases in direct proportion to the degree of realism involved in its execution. The amphibious and mech nature of the AV pressures the enemy to divert forces to deal with the threat, thus achieving the desired effect. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To pressures the enemy to divert forces. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Maneuver AVs into required tactical wave formations.
3. Conduct turn-away.
4. Re-embark amphibious shipping.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1

8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-AMPH-5001 AA-AMPH-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-TAC-2004
1833AAV-VOPS-1009	1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-TAC-2004
AA-AMPH-3004	AA-AMPH-4001	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-5006: Support an Amphibious Withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The amphibious withdrawal involves the evacuation of land forces by sea in naval ships or craft from a hostile shore. Amphibious withdrawals may be conducted to extract a force under pressure, to assist in the repositioning of forces elsewhere in theater, to reconstitute forces afloat or to establish a reserve after introduction of follow-on forces. The armored and amphibious nature of AVs makes them particularly well suited for withdrawing forces from hostile shores. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To extract forces from a hostile or potentially hostile shore to amphibious shipping. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Establish defensive measures in the troop embarkation area.
3. Conduct delaying/defensive actions as necessary.
4. Initiate withdrawal.
5. Recover aboard amphibious shipping.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-AMPH-5001 AA-AMPH-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1006	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1006	1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-TAC-2006
1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-TAC-2006	AA-AMPH-3004
AA-AMPH-4001		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		QUANTITY
L311	Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 per vehicle
L312	Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-C2-5001: Plan for Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations
MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Supported unit commanders and their staffs must continually synchronize and integrate operations. (MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process, Ch. 1, p. 1-4)

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters operation order, commander's guidance, and key leaders.

STANDARD: To prepare the unit for combat missions. (MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process, Ch. 1, p. 1-4)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Receive HHQ order.
2. Plan use of available time.
3. Conduct METT-TC analysis.
4. Issue warning order.

5. Arrange for reconnaissance.
6. Coordinate with adjacent and supporting units.
7. Make reconnaissance: update METT-TC, develop enemy's most probable COA.
8. Complete the plan.
9. Issue the order.
10. Prepare for combat.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCDP 5 Planning
5. MCDP 6 Command and Control
6. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-C2-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1006	1803AAV-TAC-1001	1803ACV-C2-1006
1803ACV-TAC-1001	1833AAV-C2-2006	1833AAV-C2-2007
1833ACV-C2-2004	1833ACV-C2-2005	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	CACCTUS	Unit Hours	8	Y

AA-C2-5002: Prepare for Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Forward-deployed forces must be prepared to quickly respond to either quell the crisis or set conditions for the introduction of a larger force.(MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 4, p. 4-16)

CONDITION: Given a task-organized platoon.

STANDARD: To provide a unit that is staffed, organized, trained, and equipped to operate inside the MAGTF. (MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations, Ch. 1, p. 1-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Identify/Stabilize personnel.
3. Identify logistical requirements.
4. Conduct pre-deployment training.
5. Conduct pre/post personnel turnover inspections.
6. Conduct pre/post deployment health services.
7. Conduct pre/post equipment turnover inspections.
8. As required, identify ADVON/RBE leaders and personnel.
9. Transfer administrative control to gaining unit.
10. Transfer equipment to gaining unit.
11. Transfer operational control to gaining unit.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
2. MCRP 1-10.1 Organization of the United States Marine Corps
3. MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook
4. MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
5. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-C2-6003

AA-GNRY-5001: Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-15)

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped platoon, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-15)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AA-GNRY-4003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803AAV-GNRY-1007	1803ACV-GNRY-1006
1803ACV-GNRY-1007	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-GNRY-1005
1833ACV-GNRY-2003	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2007		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AA-GNRY-5002: Conduct Gun Table XI

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-16)

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped platoon, fully sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with the minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-16)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-GNRY-4003 AA-GNRY-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803AAV-GNRY-1007	1803ACV-GNRY-1006
1803ACV-GNRY-1007	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2003
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007
1833ACV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-2006	1833ACV-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months.
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
3. This can be done as a dry run on the range.

AA-GNRY-5003: Conduct Gun Table XII

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XII is designed to evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-17)

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped platoon, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-17)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3005
AA-GNRY-4003	AA-GNRY-5001	AA-GNRY-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1004	1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803AAV-GNRY-1007
1803ACV-C2-1004	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1007
1833AAV-C2-2002	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-C2-2002
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2007		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	3600 rounds per Platoon
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	3600 rounds per Platoon
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	768 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months.
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AA-LOG-5001: Conduct Resupply

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: AVs can travel rough terrain, they are used to supplement the vehicles of the combat trains. AVs assigned to support units may be used to carry fuel bladders, prepackaged ammunition, and other supplies or as an ambulance when fitted with litter carriers. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 6, p. 6-1)

CONDITION: Given a logistic requirement and higher headquarters' mission.

STANDARD: To lift supplies and equipment to a designated location.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Submit logistics request.
2. Coordinate with supported/supporting unit.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Utilize resupply methods.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-LOG-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1005	1803AAV-SUPT-1002	1803ACV-C2-1005
1803ACV-SUPT-1002	1833AAV-C2-2003	1833AAV-SUPT-2002
1833ACV-C2-2003	1833ACV-SUPT-2002	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV, however, the ACV does not have the same capacity or equipment as the AAV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-LOG-5002: Conduct Recovery Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR) restores the minimum essential combat capabilities necessary to support a specific combat mission or to enable the equipment to self-recover. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 6, p. 6-7)

CONDITION: Given a vehicle that is disabled/mired.

STANDARD: To return the disabled AV to operation or take it to a collection point. (MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR), p.2-17)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task-organize platoon.
2. Vehicle commander reports condition, location and circumstances of damage.
3. Recover or repair equipment.
4. Request recovery team.
5. Remove equipment from the battlefield as required.
6. When directed, destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
7. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
2. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-LOG-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS: AA-LOG-4001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AA-LOG-5003: Support Casualty Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Casualty treatment includes triage and all levels of care from self-aid to buddy aid to resuscitative care. It begins at the point of injury and continues until the injured individual leaves by CASEVAC. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations Ch. 13, p. 13-12)

CONDITION: Given injured personnel with an air or ground platform capable of conducting a CASEVAC.

STANDARD: To treat and evacuate casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption to the mission, while maintaining accountability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. If able, casualty applies self-aid.
2. If in direct contact with the enemy, utilize suppression and smoke to allow for movement to the casualty.
3. Marines apply buddy aid to the injured.
4. Evacuate friendly and enemy wounded in action (WIA) and killed in action (KIA) to Casualty Collection Point (CCP), while taking reasonable measures to safeguard casualties.
5. Weapons, serialized gear, and Personnel Protective Equipment (PPE) are handled and accounted for in accordance with unit Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs).

6. Wounded enemy combatants are safeguarded/escorted as required.
7. Unit corpsmen conduct triage at CCP, and advise company leadership on evacuation priorities and numbers.
8. Conduct coordination with higher headquarters for evacuation.
9. Begin casualty reporting and tracking immediately after an individual is wounded, starting at the lowest level and terminating at higher headquarters.
10. In accordance with SOPs, civilian casualties are either evacuated through military system, or coordination is conducted for treatment by civilian medical personnel/facilities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-40A.7 Patient Movement
4. MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-LOG-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1005	1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-SUPT-1002
1803ACV-C2-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001	1803ACV-SUPT-1002
1833AAV-C2-2003	1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-SUPT-2002
1833ACV-C2-2003	1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-SUPT-2002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV, however, the ACV does not have the same capacity or equipment as the AAV.

AA-TAC-5001: Conduct an Action Drill

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Immediate action drills exist to provide the opportunity for unit leadership to execute the basic steps in addressing any chance contact or meeting engagement, to deploy and report, to develop the situation and to determine a COA. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 6, p. 6-34)

CONDITION: Given a task-organized platoon.

STANDARD: To respond immediately to enemy contact without hesitation. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 6, p. 6-33)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify change in enemy situation.
2. Develop the situation.
3. Issue orders.
4. All vehicles conduct necessary formations.
5. Send reports as required.
6. Continue mission.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-TAC-6001	AA-TAC-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1001	1803AAV-C2-1004	1803AAV-TAC-1004
1803ACV-C2-1001	1803ACV-C2-1004	1803ACV-TAC-1004
1833AAV-C2-1001	1833AAV-TAC-1001	1833ACV-C2-1001
1833ACV-TAC-1001	AA-TAC-3001	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

AA-TAC-5002: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: A passage of lines is an operation in which a force moves forward or rearward through another force's combat positions with the intentions of moving into or out of contact with the enemy. A passage of lines is conducted to continue an attack or conduct a counterattack, retrograde security or main battle forces, and anytime one unit cannot bypass another unit's position. The conduct of a passage of lines involves two forces: the stationary force and the moving force. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 4, p. 4-20)

CONDITION: Given a task-organized platoon.

STANDARD: To effectively maintain momentum when passing a unit forward or rearward (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 4, p. 4-20)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Conduct link-up procedures.
3. Moving unit maintains turret orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.
6. Moving unit reports completion upon reaching Battle Handover Line.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-TAC-6001 AA-TAC-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1003	1803AAV-C2-1004	1803ACV-C2-1003
1803ACV-C2-1003	1803ACV-C2-1004	1833AAV-C2-1002
1833ACV-C2-1002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AA-TAC-5003: Support a Mechanized Attack (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: A tactical operation designed to maximize the ground mobility, protection, shock action, and firepower of combat vehicles to concentrate combat power rapidly against the enemy. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), p. N-8)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the movement of another unit by fire.(MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), p. 4-14)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in the planning.
2. Conduct inspections, rehearsals and preparations.
3. Provide recommendations for dismount points, load/bump plans, and linkup points/procedures.
4. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver.
5. Support mortar section as necessary.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Apply movement techniques and formations.
8. Conduct immediate actions/battle drills as required.
9. Establish support by fire as required.
10. Breach obstacles as necessary.
11. Conduct actions on the objective.
12. Consolidate and prepare for follow-on operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-SUPT-1002	1803AAV-TAC-1005
1803AAV-TAC-1007	1803ACV-SUPT-1001	1803ACV-SUPT-1002
1803ACV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-TAC-1007	1833AAV-SUPT-2001
1833AAV-SUPT-2002	1833AAV-TAC-2004	1833AAV-TAC-2005
1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-SUPT-2002	1833ACV-TAC-2004
1833ACV-TAC-2005	AA-TAC-4001	AA-TAC-4002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-5004: Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The mech unit should consolidate and reorganize as soon as it takes an objective. An objective is held until the commander orders other action. At times, the attack may be continued with little or no hesitation to exploit success. In this case, only required reorganization is done, and consolidation is unnecessary. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 4, p. 4-19)

CONDITION: Given a task-organized platoon.

STANDARD: To rapidly an efficiently prepare the attacking force for future actions. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 6, p. 6-18)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish a hasty defense.
2. Coordinate mutual support with adjacent units.
3. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
4. Process ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports.
5. Redistribute ammunition, personnel, supplies, and equipment.
6. Send logistics reports to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct essential maintenance.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-TAC-6001	AA-TAC-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1005	1803AAV-VOPS-1005	1803ACV-C2-1005
1803ACV-VOPS-1005	1833AAV-C2-2003	1833AAV-VOPS-1003
1833ACV-C2-2003	1833ACV-VOPS-1003	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the description is cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-5005: Support a Movement to Contact (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: A force conducting a movement to contact is organized in an approach march formation with advance, flank, and rear security elements protecting the main body. The main body contains the bulk of the force's combat power. The advance force, flank, and rear security formations may consist of aviation or ground combat units (one or both as individual elements or as a task-organized combined arms team) and appropriate CSS organizations based on METT-T. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), p. 4-2)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To create favorable conditions for subsequent tactical tasks, such as forcing the enemy to reveal themselves, develop the combat situation, and maintains the commander's freedom of action after contact is gained. (MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics, Ch. 4)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Assist in planning.
3. Task-organize AA units.
4. Conduct resupply.
5. Prepare for operations.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Cross line of departure.
8. Monitor and adjust movement formations based on estimate of the situation.
9. Breach obstacles as necessary.
10. Conduct gap crossing if necessary.
11. Execute actions on contact.
12. Send reports to higher.
13. Consolidate and prepare for follow-on operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. ATP 3-90.1 Armor and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1007	1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-SUPT-1002
1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1007	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-SUPT-1002	1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2007
1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-SUPT-2002	1833AAV-TAC-2004
1833ACV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-SUPT-2002
1833ACV-TAC-2004	AA-TAC-4002	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the description are cited from the AAV manual, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-5006: Support Defensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The basic defense fundamentals that must be considered include maneuver, preparation, concentration of combat power, flexibility, offensive actions, use of terrain, security, mutual support, defense in depth, as well as fire support and obstacle plans. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 5, p. 5-1)

CONDITION: Given an infantry unit, an order from higher headquarters, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To create conditions for a counterattack that allows forces to regain the initiative and return to the offense. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 5, p. 5-6)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish security.
2. Assist in the planning.
3. Task-organize AA unit.
4. Identify and mark primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
5. Occupy battle position.
6. Conduct work in accordance with priorities and timeline.
7. Advise on effective employment of weapons systems, safety, and geometry of fires.

8. Establish principle direction(s) of fire.
9. Establish fields of fire.
10. Produce, receive and forward fire plan sketches and range cards.
11. Adhere to communications and signals plan.
12. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan and defensive battle drills.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-90.1 Armor and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1004	1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-SUPT-1002
1803AAV-TAC-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1004	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-SUPT-1002	1803ACV-TAC-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-2005
1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-SUPT-2002	1833AAV-TAC-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2005	1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-SUPT-2002
1833ACV-TAC-2006	AA-TAC-4003	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1.This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-5007: Support a Retrograde (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The retrograde is a form of defensive method that involves organized movement away from the enemy. The enemy may force these operations or a commander may execute them voluntarily. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 7, p. 7-10)

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To conduct an organized movement away from the enemy. (MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations, Ch. 7, p. 7-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine method of retrograde.
3. Plan for alternate or successive delaying actions as required.
4. Break contact, if necessary, from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Adhere to tactical control measures.
7. Maintain security.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Prepare for follow-on operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-6003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-TAC-1003	1803ACV-TAC-1003	1833AAV-TAC-2001
1833ACV-TAC-2001	AA-TAC-3001	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM

Yes	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AA-TAC-5008: Support Shore-to-Shore Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Shore-to-shore assault operations can be executed from different locations along the coastline, from the mainland to nearby islands, from island to island or land to land. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-25)

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To establish a force on a shore for the immediate execution of inland maneuver (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p 3-1).

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct terrain analysis.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Advance to the waterline.
4. Establish near side security.
5. Cross waterway.
6. Establish far side security.
7. Continue the mission.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-90.4/MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AA-AMPH-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1007	1803ACV-AMPH-1007	1833AAV-AMPH-2004
1833ACV-AMPH-2004	AA-AMPH-4001	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area
Facility Code 17922 Floating Bridge Site

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-5009: Support Riverine Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Riverine operations are conducted to control the military aspects of an area dominated by inland bodies of water. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 9, 9-3)

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To prevent an opposing force from using the river for its own purposes. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 9, p. 9-3)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct troop leading procedures.
2. Determine environmental factors.
3. Determine type of operation (assault or surveillance, interdiction, and security).
4. Task-organize unit.
5. Review hydrographic data (waterway depth, width, bottom composition, currents, tidal ranges/currents, and bank characteristics).
6. Identify River Landing Areas and River Landing Sites.
7. Determine route.
8. Integrate fires.
9. Conduct rehearsals.
10. Execute mission.
11. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
12. Prepare for follow-on operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. NTTP 3-10.1 Coastal Riverine Force Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AA-AMPH-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-6001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-TAC-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1007	1803ACV-TAC-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1007	1833AAV-TAC-2005	1833ACV-TAC-2005
AA-AMPH-4001	AA-TAC-4002	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

SECTION & CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	5000	5-2
EVENT CODING	5001	5-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	5002	5-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	5003	5-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS	5004	5-3
SECTION AND CREW LEVEL EVENTS	5005	5-4

CHAPTER 5

SECTION & CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

5000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Section and Crew-level Assault Amphibian unit events (4000 and 3000-Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AA" indicating that the event is for units in the AA Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the section and crew level are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations
LOG - Logistics
GNRY - Gunnery
C2 - Command and Control

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Section. The mission of the Assault Amphibian (AA) section is to provide combat support to the infantry rifle platoon. The AA section consists of three to five AV crews and is led by the AA section leader. He exercises tactical control of his AVs under the command of the AA platoon commander.

a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
b. Conduct amphibious operations.

c. Conduct mechanized operations.
d. Conduct offensive operations.
e. Conduct defensive operations.
f. Employ AA section fires.
g. Operate in a CBRN environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Section, Command. The mission of the AA command section is to provide battalion and regimental level staffs with a mechanized command center.

a. Establish a command post.
b. Conduct amphibious operations.
c. Conduct mechanized operations.
d. Conduct defensive operations.
e. Employ AA command section fires.
f. Operate in a CBRN environment.

3. AV Crew. The mission of the AV crew is to support the reinforced infantry squad within the mission of the AA section. The crew is led by the Vehicle Commander and operates under the direction of the AA Section Leader.

a. Operate the AV on land and in water with other vehicles in the section.
b. Transport embarked personnel and cargo.
c. Employ Weapons Station.
d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
e. Operate in a CBRN environment.

4. AV Crew, Command Variant. The mission of the AV Command Variant crew is to support the battalion and regimental level headquarters as a mechanized command post/fire support coordination center. The AV intercom assets provide the embarked troop commander and his staff with the capability to communicate with each other and to remotely operate radio assets from staff positions within the vehicle. The crew is led by the Vehicle Commander and operates under the direction of the AA Command Section Leader.

a. Operate the AV on land and in water with other vehicles in the section.
b. Operate the AV communications equipment.
c. Employ Weapons Station.
d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
e. Perform PMCS on communications equipment.
f. Operate in a CBRN environment.

5004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

Event Code	E-Coded	Event	Page
4000 Level Events			
AA-AMPH-4001	NO	Prepare for Amphibious Operations (S/L)	5-4
AA-AMPH-4002	NO	Conduct Waterborne Evacuation of Personnel	5-6
AA-AMPH-4003	NO	Recover Disabled AV in the Water	5-8

AA-AMPH-4004	YES	Support Amphibious Operations	5-9
AA-AMPH-4005	NO	Support an Amphibious Assault	5-11
AA-AMPH-4006	NO	Support an Amphibious Raid	5-12
AA-AMPH-4007	NO	Support an Amphibious Demonstration	5-14
AA-AMPH-4008	NO	Support an Amphibious Withdrawal	5-15
AA-C2-4001	YES	Support Command Section Operations	5-17
AA-GNRY-4001	NO	Conduct Gun Table VII (S)	5-18
AA-GNRY-4002	NO	Conduct Gun Table VIII	5-19
AA-GNRY-4003	YES	Conduct Gun Table IX	5-20
AA-LOG-4001	NO	Conduct Recovery Operations	5-21
AA-TAC-4001	NO	Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)	5-23
AA-TAC-4002	YES	Support Offensive Operations (S/L)	5-24
AA-TAC-4003	YES	Support Defensive Operations (S/L)	5-26
3000 Level Events			
AA-AMPH-3001	NO	Egress the Amphibious Vehicle (S)	5-27
AA-AMPH-3002	YES	Conduct Waterborne Operations (S/L)	5-29
AA-AMPH-3003	NO	Conduct Waterborne Evacuation of Personnel	5-31
AA-AMPH-3004	NO	Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping	5-32
AA-C2-3001	NO	Operate the AV Communications Variant	5-34
AA-GNRY-3001	NO	Conduct Gun Table II (S)	5-35
AA-GNRY-3002	NO	Conduct Gun Table III	5-36
AA-GNRY-3003	NO	Conduct Gun Table IV	5-37
AA-GNRY-3004	NO	Conduct Gun Table V	5-39
AA-GNRY-3005	YES	Conduct Gun Table VI	5-40
AA-TAC-3001	NO	Employ AV on Land (S/L)	5-42

5005. SECTION AND CREW LEVEL EVENTS

AA-AMPH-4001: Prepare for Amphibious Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Advanced planning will be conducted to ensure that both Naval and Marine forces understand sequence of events, training objectives, operational procedures, and communication procedures to be used. A maximum effort is made to prepare personnel and machines for combat considering both AA and supported unit SOPs. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-17)

CONDITION: Given an AA section and operation order or warning order.

STANDARD: To conduct all tasks prior to water operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-17)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Ensure personnel are Water Survival and Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET) qualified.
2. Conduct mission analysis.

3. Task-organize.
4. Conduct planning.
5. Assist in amphibious staff planning.
6. Develop concept of support and load plans as required.
7. Produce necessary landing documents.
8. Integrate plans with supported and adjacent units.
9. Complete pre-water operations checks and inspections.
10. Determine Modified Surf Index (MSI) and Sea State.
11. Identify designated Recovery Team(s) (RT) and safety boats.
12. Issue personal flotation devices (PFD) with supplemental emergency breathing devices (SEBD).
13. Deliver Embarked Troop Brief (ETB).
14. Conduct emergency procedure rehearsals.
15. Submit personnel manifests.
16. Verify positive radio communication with all participating units.
17. Conduct Splash Team checks.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1002
1833AAV-AMPH-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1002	1833ACV-AMPH-2001
AA-AMPH-3001		

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-4004	AA-AMPH-4005	AA-AMPH-4006
AA-AMPH-4007	AA-AMPH-4008	AA-AMPH-5002
AA-AMPH-5003	AA-AMPH-5004	AA-AMPH-5005
AA-AMPH-5006	AA-TAC-5008	AA-TAC-5009

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1004	1803AAV-C2-1001	1803AAV-C2-1002
1803AAV-VOPS-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1004	1803ACV-C2-1001
1803ACV-C2-1002	1803ACV-VOPS-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1004
1833AAV-C2-1001	1833AAV-VOPS-1001	1833ACV-AMPH-1004
1833ACV-C2-1001	1833ACV-VOPS-1001	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM

Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. Amphibious shipping and infantry are not required to accomplish this event.

AA-AMPH-4002: Conduct Waterborne Evacuation of Personnel

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: While waterborne recovery procedures cannot be established for all circumstances, this includes emergency signals, recovery teams, transfer of passengers, retrieval of man overboard, towing, special safety considerations, sinking AV procedures, and crewmember's responsibilities.(TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1, p. 2-228)

CONDITION: Given an AA section with one disabled/slow sinking waterborne AV.

STANDARD: To recover embarked passengers and crew. (TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1, p. 2-228)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Disabled/sinking AV alerts unit of distress.
2. Determine method of transfer.
3. Position recovery vehicle to receive personnel.
4. Move personnel topside and conduct transfer.
5. Receive personnel in recovery vehicle.
6. Gain accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1002
1833ACV-AMPH-1002	AA-AMPH-3002	

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1001	1803AAV-AMPH-1003	1803AAV-AMPH-1004
1803AAV-C2-1001	1803AAV-C2-1002	1803AAV-VOPS-1002
1803ACV-AMPH-1001	1803ACV-AMPH-1003	1803ACV-AMPH-1004
1803ACV-C2-1001	1803ACV-C2-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1001
1833AAV-AMPH-1003	1833AAV-AMPH-1004	1833AAV-AMPH-2002
1833AAV-AMPH-2003	1833AAV-C2-1001	1833AAV-C2-1002
1833AAV-C2-2001	1833AAV-C2-2002	1833AAV-VOPS-2001
1833ACV-AMPH-1001	1833ACV-AMPH-1003	1833ACV-AMPH-1004
1833ACV-AMPH-2002	1833ACV-AMPH-2003	1833ACV-C2-1001
1833ACV-C2-1002	1833ACV-C2-2001	1833ACV-C2-2002
1833ACV-VOPS-2001		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-4003: Recover Disabled AV in the Water

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Disabled AVs should be towed to the nearest safe haven (amphibious ship or beach). (TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles, p. 2-218)

CONDITION: Given an AA section in a body of water with one disabled AV.

STANDARD: To tow the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven. (TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles, p. 2-218)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Disabled AV alerts unit of distress.
2. Assess the environment.
3. Position recovery AV to recover disabled AV.
4. Transfer embarked troops as necessary.
5. Hook towlines.
6. Tow AV to nearest safe haven.
7. Remove tow lines.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803AAV-AMPH-1002 1803ACV-AMPH-1002 1833AAV-AMPH-1002

1833AAV-AMPH-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1002	1833ACV-AMPH-2001
AA-AMPH-3002		

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1004	1803AAV-AMPH-1005	1803AAV-C2-1001
1803AAV-C2-1002	1803AAV-VOPS-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1004
1803ACV-AMPH-1005	1803ACV-C2-1001	1803ACV-C2-1002
1803ACV-VOPS-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1004	1833AAV-AMPH-1005
1833AAV-AMPH-2001	1833AAV-C2-1001	1833AAV-C2-2001
1833AAV-VOPS-1001	1833AAV-VOPS-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1004
1833ACV-AMPH-1005	1833ACV-AMPH-2001	1833ACV-C2-1001
1833ACV-C2-2001	1833ACV-VOPS-1001	1833ACV-VOPS-2001
AA-AMPH-3003		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. When towing to L-Class shipping ensure communication is made with the controlling ship.
3. If at any point the towed vehicle places the towing vehicle in jeopardy, disconnect tow lines.

AA-AMPH-4004: Support Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: There are five principal types of amphibious operations: the assault, raid, demonstration, withdrawal, and other operations. Various capabilities and functions of AVs provide support for these amphibious operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

CONDITION: Given a mission, commander's intent, amphibious shipping, and a requirement to conduct one static and two underway launches.

STANDARD: To establish a force on shore. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assist in the planning process.
2. Attend pre-sail confirmation brief with naval and supported unit leadership, as required.
3. Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping.
4. Refuel as necessary.
5. Conduct rehearsals.
6. Conduct debarkation of amphibious shipping.
7. Execute ship-to-shore movement.
8. Assist in phasing control ashore.
9. Execute scheme of maneuver.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1004	1803ACV-AMPH-1004	1833AAV-AMPH-2003
1833ACV-AMPH-2003	AA-AMPH-3002	AA-AMPH-3003

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5002	AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1006	1803ACV-AMPH-1006	1833AAV-AMPH-1006
1833ACV-AMPH-1007	AA-AMPH-3004	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. This event should be trained to standard without embarked troops before conducting with embarked troops and/or supporting infantry T&R tasks.

AA-AMPH-4005: Support an Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The amphibious assault is the most important type of amphibious operation. AA unit leaders maintain tactical control of AVs and embarked troops during waterborne movement. The CATF accomplishes the movement of the landing force to the beach through the AA unit and naval elements. Landing ships, helicopters, and AVs may be employed in this mission. The waterborne formations of AVs in the assault are similar to those of infantry formations. AVs low silhouette and armored hull make them very survivable against direct and indirect fire weapons if detected in the assault. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-17)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To establish a force on a shore for the immediate execution of inland maneuver (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Coordinate with Navy and Marine planning staffs.
2. Conduct planning and task organize.
3. Conduct ship-to-objective maneuver.
4. Conduct actions on the objective.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-4001	AA-AMPH-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5002	AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-TAC-2004	1833AAV-VOPS-1009
1833ACV-TAC-2004	AA-AMPH-3004	AA-TAC-4002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-4006: Support an Amphibious Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: An amphibious raid is a landing from the sea involving swift incursion into hostile territory for a specified purpose that is followed by a planned withdrawal. Raid forces consist of individuals or unit(s) with the capabilities or skills required to accomplish the mission. Raid forces should be as small as possible to maximize stealth and speed and to achieve (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To land from the sea to inflict loss or damage, secure information, create a diversion, or capture or evacuate individuals/material followed by a planned withdrawal. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task-organize for the raid.
2. Conduct ship-to-shore maneuver.
3. Maneuver security element into designated positions.
4. Maneuver support element to over-watch position.
5. Maneuver assault element to designated assault position.
6. Conduct actions on objective.
7. Execute planned withdrawal.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-AMPH-4001 AA-AMPH-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AA-AMPH-5002 AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-TAC-2004	1833AAV-VOPS-1009
1833ACV-TAC-2004	AA-AMPH-3004	AA-AMPH-4001
AA-AMPH-4002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-4007: Support an Amphibious Demonstration

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The amphibious demonstration is conducted to deceive the enemy by a show of force with the expectation of deluding the enemy into a course of action unfavorable to them. The effectiveness of a demonstration increases in direct proportion to the degree of realism involved in its execution. The amphibious and mech nature of the AV pressures the enemy to divert forces to deal with the threat, thus achieving the desired effect. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To pressure the enemy to divert forces. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Maneuver AVs into required tactical wave formations.
3. Conduct turn-away.
4. Re-embark amphibious shipping.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AA-AMPH-4004

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5002	AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1005	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1005	1833AAV-TAC-2004	1833AAV-VOPS-1009
1833ACV-TAC-2004	AA-AMPH-3004	AA-AMPH-4001
AA-AMPH-4002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-AMPH-4008: Support an Amphibious Withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The amphibious withdrawal involves the evacuation of land forces by sea in naval ships or craft from a hostile shore. Amphibious withdrawals may be conducted to extract a force under pressure, to assist in the repositioning of forces elsewhere in theater, to reconstitute forces afloat or to establish a reserve after introduction of follow-on forces. The armored and amphibious nature of AVs makes them particularly well suited for withdrawing forces from hostile shores. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To extract forces from a hostile or potentially hostile shore to amphibious shipping. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Establish defensive measures in the troop embarkation area.
3. Conduct delaying/defensive actions as necessary.
4. Initiate withdrawal.
5. Recover aboard amphibious shipping.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-4001	AA-AMPH-4002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5002	AA-AMPH-6002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-TAC-1006	1803ACV-SUPT-1001
1803ACV-TAC-1006	1833AAV-TAC-2006	1833AAV-VOPS-1009
1833ACV-TAC-2006	AA-AMPH-3004	AA-AMPH-4001
AA-TAC-4003		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-C2-4001: Support Command Section Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations	MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The AV communication variant is a highly capable C2 platform. Its communication system allows for tactical radio communications while remaining self-contained and highly mobile. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)Ch. 9, p. 9-3)

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters staff and available vehicles.

STANDARD: To provide the supported commander and staff with the latest C2 communications systems to allow secure communications. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Appx. B, p. B-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in establishing mobile COC.
2. Task-organize AV vehicles.
3. Advise supported unit on command section employment.
4. Employ medium and heavy machine guns, as required.
5. Assist supported unit with operating the communications suite system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS)
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833AAV-C2-2004

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803ACV-SUPT-1001	1833AAV-SUPT-2001
1833ACV-SUPT-2001	AA-C2-3001	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AA-GNRY-4001: Conduct Gun Table VII (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to fire and maneuver as a section. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18 p. 18-11)

CONDITION: Given an AV maneuver element section allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-11)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803ACV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1001
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	AA-GNRY-3005	

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-GNRY-2005	1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007
1833ACV-GNRY-2003	1833ACV-GNRY-2005	1833ACV-GNRY-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2007		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. All Crews must have passed Gun table VI.

AA-GNRY-4002: Conduct Gun Table VIII

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks and prepare section for qualification. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-12)

CONDITION: Given an AV section, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-12)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-GNRY-3005 AA-GNRY-4001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-2006
1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2003
1833ACV-GNRY-2006	1833ACV-GNRY-2007	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event can be completed on the range as a dry run.
2. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months.

AA-GNRY-4003: Conduct Gun Table IX

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IX is designed to evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-13)

CONDITION: Given an AV section, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-13)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3005
AA-GNRY-4001	AA-GNRY-4002	

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-C2-2002	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-C2-2002
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2003	1833ACV-GNRY-2004
1833ACV-GNRY-2006	1833ACV-GNRY-2007	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY

A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	1200 rounds per Section
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	1200 rounds per Section
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	256 rounds per Section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AA-LOG-4001: Conduct Recovery Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR) restores the minimum essential combat capabilities necessary to support a specific combat mission or to enable the equipment to self-recover. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)Ch. 6, p. 6-7)

CONDITION: Given a vehicle that is disabled/mired AV.

STANDARD: To return the disabled AV to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal. (MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR), p.2-17)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Vehicle commanders provide condition, location and circumstances of damage.
2. Conduct assessment of recovery method to be used.
3. Recover or repair equipment.
4. As directed, destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items, and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable.
5. Provide updates to higher headquarters.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics
5. MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-LOG-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-VOPS-1007	1803AAV-VOPS-1008	1803ACV-VOPS-1007
1803ACV-VOPS-1008	1833AAV-SUPT-2003	1833AAV-VOPS-1008
1833AAV-VOPS-1010	1833ACV-SUPT-2003	1833ACV-VOPS-1007
1833ACV-VOPS-1008		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the description is cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA-TAC-4001: Conduct a Support by Fire (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The purpose of a support by fire position is to support the maneuver of another force by using direct fires to suppress or neutralize enemy positions capable of affecting the maneuver force. Support by fire positions are located within the maximum friendly direct fire range of the enemy, in a manner that prevents being masked by friendly maneuver, and properly de-conflicted from other elements of battlespace geometry. Support by fire positions are often located on the flank of the assault force, elevated above the objective if possible. Support by fire positions are rarely applicable to units larger than company size. (MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics, Ch. 3, p. 3-10)

CONDITION: Given a AV section and supported unit.

STANDARD: To support the maneuver of another force by using direct fires to suppress or neutralize an enemy force. (MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics, Ch. 3, p. 3-10)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct troop-leading procedures.
2. Determine location of support by fire.
3. Integrate fires in support of maneuver.
4. Occupy support by fire location.
5. Coordinate with supported unit.
6. Engage enemy.
7. Control direct fires.
8. Determine effects on target(s).
9. Execute signal plan.
10. Adjust fires/overwatch, as necessary.
11. Displace, as necessary.
12. Submit combat reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-5003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-C2-2002	1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833AAV-GNRY-2007
1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-SUPT-2002	1833ACV-C2-2002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AA-TAC-4002: Support Offensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The supported unit and AA units are task-organized to create a single tactical combat unit, and work together to achieve unity of command and effort according to the supported unit commander's concept of operations. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 1, p. 1-8)

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To achieve the effects of combined arms. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 4, p. 4-12)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assist in the planning.
2. Conduct inspections, rehearsals and preparations.
3. Provide recommendations for dismount points, load/bump plans, and linkup points/procedures.
4. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver.
5. Execute command and control.
6. Apply movement techniques and formations.
7. Conduct immediate actions/battle drills as required.
8. Establish support by fire.
9. Conduct actions on the objective.
10. Consolidate.
11. Submit reports as required.
12. Prepare for follow-on actions.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. ATP 3-90.1 Armor and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations

3. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-5003	AA-AMPH-5004	AA-TAC-5003
AA-TAC-5005	AA-TAC-5008	AA-TAC-5009

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-C2-2006	1833AAV-C2-2007	1833AAV-SUPT-2001
1833AAV-SUPT-2002	1833AAV-TAC-2004	1833ACV-C2-2004
1833ACV-C2-2005	1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-SUPT-2002
1833ACV-TAC-2006		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. All vehicle commanders and crewmembers must be at least GST and Gun Table I weapons qualified prior to operating in a live-fire and movement environment.

AA-TAC-4003: Support Defensive Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: A defensive operation is an operation conducted to defeat an enemy attack, gain time, economize forces, and develop conditions favorable to offensive or stability operations. Defensive operations alone normally cannot achieve a decision. Their purpose is to create conditions that allow friendly forces to regain the initiative and return to the offense. They do so by attriting or fixing the enemy, retaining terrain decisive to mission accomplishment, denying a vital area to the enemy, or by increasing an adversary's vulnerability as they concentrate mass to attack. There are three types of defensive operations: the area defense, the mobile defense, and the retrograde. (MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics, Ch. 8)

CONDITION: Given an infantry unit, an order from higher headquarters, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To force the attacker to reach a culminating point without achieving their objectives and create the opportunity to shift to the offense. (MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics, Ch. 8)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish security.
2. Assist in the planning.
3. Task-organize AA unit.
4. Identify and mark primary, alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Occupy battle position.
6. Conduct work in accordance with priorities and timeline.
7. Advise on effective employment of weapons systems, safety, and geometry of fires.
8. Establish principle direction(s) of fire.
9. Establish fields of fire.
10. Produce, receive and forward fire plan sketches and range cards.
11. Adhere to communications and signals plan.
12. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan and defensive battle drills.
13. Entrench and improve positions/lines of communication.
14. Establish alert postures.
15. Conduct continuing actions.
16. Submit combat reports.
17. Support retrograde as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833AAV-GNRY-1004 1833AAV-GNRY-2002 1833AAV-GNRY-2005

1833ACV-GNRY-1004 1833ACV-GNRY-2001 1833ACV-GNRY-2005

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-TAC-5006

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-C2-2005 1833AAV-SUPT-2001 1833AAV-SUPT-2002
1833AAV-TAC-2004 1833ACV-SUPT-2001 1833ACV-SUPT-2002
1833ACV-TAC-2006

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. At the time of publishing this manual, the AA community did not have the ACV-Command vehicle or a Technical Manual (TM) for this vehicle. When the AA community acquires the ACV-C model with TM this event will be adjusted to include new TM and internal supporting event (1833ACV-C2-2105-Prepare Install a Wire Communication Hot/Gun Loop, if capable) as a change to the manual. This event still applies to both variants except the ACV-C in the defense

---

AA-AMPH-3001: Egress the Amphibious Vehicle (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Watertight integrity is compromised to the extent that water entering the vehicle exceeds the amount of water being pumped out. This situation will require egress if the vehicle is sinking rapidly or becomes submerged. (TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2, Ch. 2, p. 2-220)

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AV with embarked personnel.

STANDARD: To egress all crew and embarked personnel in the quickest way possible. (TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2, Ch. 2, p. 2-220)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Order "egress, egress, egress."
2. Crew and embarked personnel employ emergency breathing devices.
3. Crew and embarked personnel unlock hatches.
4. Crew and embarked personnel open hatches and exit the AV.
5. Crew and embarked personnel inflate Personal Floatation Device (PFD).
6. Account for crew and embarked personnel.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1001 1803ACV-AMPH-1001 1833AAV-AMPH-1001
1833ACV-AMPH-1001

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. This event must be rehearsed on dry land and in the water prior to other water operations.

AA-AMPH-3002: Conduct Waterborne Operations (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The AV is the most seaworthy personnel landing craft in military service. It is capable of operating in calm to moderate seas. Although relatively slow in the water, the vehicle is capable of safe, long distance water marches that are limited only by extremely rough seas and associated effects of motion sickness on embarked personnel. AVs involved in waterborne operations in navigable waters are subject to the same international rules of the road as powerboats. However, during combat assaults, crafts in the boat lane are to be avoided if possible, but the execution of the mission takes precedence. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 1, p. 1-1, Ch. 3, p. 3-25)

CONDITION: Given a crew and all necessary equipment.

STANDARD: To negotiate various surf conditions and obstacles without negative impact to personnel or equipment. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1, Ch. 11, p. 11-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Prepare the vehicle for waterborne operation.
2. Conduct water entry/launch.
3. Respond to tactical control measures.
4. Apply waterborne movement formations.
5. Operate AV in water mode.
6. Respond to markers, signs, and signals.
7. Transition AV from water to land.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1002
1833ACV-AMPH-1002	AA-AMPH-3001	

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-AMPH-4001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1004	1803AAV-C2-1001	1803AAV-VOPS-1002
1803ACV-AMPH-1004	1803ACV-C2-1001	1803ACV-VOPS-1002
1833AAV-AMPH-1004	1833AAV-AMPH-2003	1833AAV-C2-1001
1833AAV-VOPS-1001	1833AAV-VOPS-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1004
1833ACV-AMPH-2003	1833ACV-C2-1001	1833ACV-VOPS-1001
1833ACV-VOPS-2001		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. Simulator is depended upon which type of vehicle is used AAV/ACV.
3. This task is intended for both calm water and surf zone operations.

AA-AMPH-3003: Conduct Waterborne Evacuation of Personnel

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: While waterborne AV emergency procedures cannot be established for all circumstances, this includes emergency signals, recovery teams, transfer of passengers, retrieval of man overboard, towing, special safety considerations, sinking evacuation procedures, and crewmember's responsibilities. (TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles, p. 2-228)

CONDITION: Given a disabled or slow sinking, waterborne AV with embarked personnel.

STANDARD: To evacuate embarked passengers and crew.(TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles, p. 2-228)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct vehicle commander emergency procedures afloat.
2. Conduct driver emergency procedures afloat.
3. Conduct crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Execute emergency distress signals.
5. Monitor and report water level triggers.
6. Determine method of transfer.
7. Move personnel topside and conduct transfer.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AA-AMPH-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:
AA-AMPH-4002 AA-AMPH-4003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1003	1803AAV-AMPH-1005	1803ACV-AMPH-1003
1803ACV-AMPH-1005	1833AAV-AMPH-1003	1833AAV-AMPH-1005
1833AAV-AMPH-2002	1833ACV-AMPH-1003	1833ACV-AMPH-1005
1833ACV-AMPH-2002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. This event must be rehearsed on dry land and in the water prior to other water operations.

AA-AMPH-3004: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task is the foundation for the conduct of amphibious assaults, raids, demonstrations, withdrawals, and other amphibious operations. For completion of this task a crew must conduct a static launch, and underway launch utilizing two of the following methods: parallel, turn-away, angled, parallel U-Turn, and angled U-Turn. One of the aforementioned launches must be conducted at night. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 3, p. 3-1, p.M-1)

CONDITION: Given an AV with crew, an amphibious ship at sea conduct night and day operations.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impacts to personnel or equipment. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), App. I)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Receive the order.
2. Identify designated Recovery Team (RT).
3. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
4. Perform embarkation procedures.
5. Perform ship approach techniques.
6. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.

7. Perform debarkation procedures.
8. Conduct tactical launch.
9. Maneuver within approach lane.
10. Respond to tactical control measures.
11. Transition to shore as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations
5. JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations
6. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
8. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
9. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1002	1803ACV-AMPH-1002	1833AAV-AMPH-1002
1833AAV-AMPH-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1002	1833ACV-AMPH-2001

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-AMPH-4004	AA-AMPH-4005	AA-AMPH-4006
AA-AMPH-4007	AA-AMPH-4008	AA-AMPH-5002
AA-AMPH-5003	AA-AMPH-5004	AA-AMPH-5005
AA-AMPH-5006		

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-AMPH-1004	1803AAV-AMPH-1006	1803AAV-C2-1002
1803ACV-AMPH-1004	1803ACV-AMPH-1006	1803ACV-C2-1002
1833AAV-AMPH-1004	1833AAV-AMPH-1006	1833AAV-C2-2001
1833AAV-C2-2001	1833AAV-VOPS-2001	1833ACV-AMPH-1004
1833ACV-AMPH-1007	1833ACV-C2-2001	1833ACV-VOPS-2001
AA-AMPH-3002		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the standard and description are cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.
2. This is considered crew certification.

AA-C2-3001: Operate the AV Communications Variant

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations	MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations
MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control		

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The AV command variant provides a highly mobile C2 platform in support of the MAGTF. The vehicle, along with other AAVs, can provide direct communication and retransmission capabilities. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 6, p. 6-19)

CONDITION: Given an AV Communications Variant with associated SL-3.

STANDARD: To provide the communications required for a supported battalion or regiment's forward headquarters echelon. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 9, p. 9-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Assist in establishing mobile COC.
2. Advise supported unit on command section employment.
3. Advise embarked staff with configuring and operating the communications suite.
4. Troubleshoot the communications suite.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833AAV-C2-2004

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS: AA-C2-4001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-SUPT-1001	1803AAV-VOPS-1005	1803AAV-VOPS-1006
1803ACV-SUPT-1001	1803ACV-VOPS-1005	1803ACV-VOPS-1006
1833AAV-SUPT-2001	1833AAV-VOPS-1003	1833AAV-VOPS-1005
1833ACV-SUPT-2001	1833ACV-VOPS-1003	1833ACV-VOPS-1004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. At the time of publishing this manual, the AA community did not have the ACV-Command vehicle or a Technical Manual (TM) for this vehicle. When the AA community acquires the ACV-C model with TM this event will be adjusted to include new TM and prerequisite event (1833ACV-C2-2004-Prepare Command Communications Suite) as a change to the manual. This event currently remains specific to the AAVC7 and does not currently apply to the ACV.

AA-GNRY-3001: Conduct Gun Table II (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table II, Simulations, is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets from a stationary and moving vehicle, during day and limited visibility in a simulated environment. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-2)

CONDITION: Given a vehicle specific simulated platform, scenario and Instructor-Operator (IO).

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum rating of qualified per simulated table. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Qualify 15 of 15 pre-live-fire exercises.
2. Qualify on 1 of 3 Pre-qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises.
3. Qualify on 1 of 3 qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-GNRY-4003	AA-GNRY-5003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	6	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification.
2. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
3. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 12 months.
4. Pre-qualification and qualification must occur on different scenarios.

AA-GNRY-3002: Conduct Gun Table III

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table III, Proficiency, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-2)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-3)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803ACV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1001
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	AA-GNRY-3001	

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
2. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew crew.
3. This event will completed on the range as a dry run.

AA-GNRY-3003: Conduct Gun Table IV

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table IV, Basic, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-3)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets, and allotted ammunition in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-4)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7 Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	750 rounds per vehicle
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	400 rounds per AAV
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	750 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	400 rounds per AAV

A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	750 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	56 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	120 rounds per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1.Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31
2. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

AA-GNRY-3004: Conduct Gun Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table V, Practice, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-4)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets, and allotted ammunition in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew, Ch. 5, p. 5-5)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.

10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	750 rounds per vehicle
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	400 rounds per AAV
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	750 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	400 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	750 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	56 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	120 rounds per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification.
2. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

AA-GNRY-3005: Conduct Gun Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table VI, Qualification, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-5)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets, and allotted ammunition in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-5)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3001
AA-GNRY-3002	AA-GNRY-3003	AA-GNRY-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1004	1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-C2-1004
1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	750 rounds per vehicle
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	400 rounds per AAV
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	750 rounds per ACV

A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	400 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	750 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	56 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	120 rounds per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance TC 3-20.31 with Training and Qualification
2. Crews will receive an overall qualification rating (Distinguished, Superior, Qualified, Unqualified) for Table VI based on the common scoring model dual qualification criteria(qualified tasks and total crew points) per the TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification.
3. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

AA-TAC-3001: Employ AV on Land (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2: Provide Task-Organized Forces

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means for Command and Control

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The three members of the AA crew and vehicle primarily support a reinforced infantry squad. The AA crewmember's operate their vehicle under the direction of the AA section leader. (MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs), Ch. 1, p. 1-7)

CONDITION: Given an area of operation.

STANDARD: To operate within maneuver space without loss or damage to equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct operations checks.
2. Apply principles of terrain driving.
3. Apply movement technique.
4. Apply movement formation.
5. Conduct battle drills.

6. Conduct immediate actions.
7. Adhere to tactical control measures.
8. Conduct actions on contact.
9. Submit combat reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

CHAINED EVENTS:

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-TAC-4001	AA-TAC-4002	AA-TAC-4003
AA-TAC-5001	AA-TAC-5002	AA-TAC-5003
AA-TAC-5004	AA-TAC-5005	AA-TAC-5006
AA-TAC-5007		

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1001	1803AAV-C2-1003	1803AAV-TAC-1002
1803AAV-TAC-1003	1803AAV-TAC-1004	1803ACV-C2-1001
1803ACV-C2-1003	1803ACV-TAC-1002	1803ACV-TAC-1003
1803ACV-TAC-1004	1833AAV-C2-1001	1833AAV-C2-1002
1833AAV-TAC-2001	1833AAV-TAC-2002	1833ACV-C2-1001
1833ACV-C2-1002	1833ACV-TAC-2001	1833ACV-TAC-2002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event applies to both the AAV and ACV. Although the description is cited from the AAV manuals, the concept still applies to both vehicle variants and will be adjusted when full fielding of the ACV is complete.

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

MOS 1803 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING	6001	6-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	6002	6-2
PREREQUISITES	6003	6-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	6004	6-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	6005	6-8
1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS	6006	6-10

CHAPTER 6

MOS 1803 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

6000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibian (AA) Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

6001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1803AAV" indicating that the event is for AAV Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Officers are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations	SUPT - Support
C2 - Command and Control	TAC - Tactical Operation
COND - Conditioning	TRNG - Training
LOG - Combat Service Support	VOPS - Vehicle Operations
GNRY - Gunnery	

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine AAV Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA and Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA.

6004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Officer will complete the Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AAV Officer will conduct additional 2000 level training in an

Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. 2000 level training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar, and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Assault Amphibious Vehicle Platoon Commander. The Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Platoon Commander is the subject matter expert on AAV operations. The AAV Platoon Commander is responsible for the vehicles and crews of the AAV platoon, and consequently, responsible training qualified crews, maintaining crew integrity, performing the Mission Essential Tasks (METs) assigned by the Company Commander. The Platoon Commander advises the Naval/Infantry Commander on the deployment, integration, and tactical employment of the AAV Platoon. The AAV Platoon Commander directs the maneuver and fires of the platoon in accordance with the intent of the Infantry Commander.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks that support section, crew, and individual objectives.

(2) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.

(3) Maintains the welfare and discipline of assigned platoon.

(4) Coordinate with supported unit commander on the roles and employment of the AAV unit.

(5) Coordinate with supported unit commander on command and control (C2) capabilities.

(6) Manages the preventive and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated SL-3/SL-4 equipment.

(7) Communicates with higher, adjacent, and supported/supporting commands using organic wired and wireless systems.

(8) Proficient in battle tracking and submitting reports.

(9) Directs CASEVAC operations.

(10) Directs movement techniques and formations.

(11) Directs operational safety procedures develops and implements operational risk mitigation.

(12) Familiar with the employment of all weapons organic to AAV platoon.

(13) Supervise organic logistics and advises supported commander on logistical requirements.

(14) Coordinates the employment of AAV Platoon as a component of the naval force throughout littoral operations.

(15) Directs the preparation of platoon through Pre-Combat Checks (PCCs) and Pre-Combat Inspections (PCIs).

(16) Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a larger force.

3. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Company Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 in the AA Company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Recommends operational planning and training considerations to the Company Commander.

(2) Maintain the accountability, functionality, and discipline of the company and assigned equipment.

(3) Supervises unit training and operations.

(4) Supervises range operations.

(5) Supervises unit logistical support requirements.

(6) Trains and mentors Platoon Commanders in performance of duties.

(7) Supervises the conduct of ancillary training events.

(8) Supervises the company's embarkation training and planning.

(9) Develops and implements Risk Management.

(10) Mentor and develop subordinate leaders to operate independently in support of a unit.

4. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Company Commander. The senior 1803 in the AA Company. The Company Commander is responsible for all equipment and personnel assigned to the company. The Company Commander is proficient with all T/O weapons within the company and is well versed on their employment. Additionally, the Company Commander is responsible for supporting the Mission Essential Tasks (METs) assigned by the Battalion Commander. The discipline, morale, and welfare of Marines within the company are the responsibilities of the Company Commander. The AA Company Commander supports the commanding officer of the supported infantry regiment or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The AA Company Commander leads one or more AA platoons and a maintenance platoon. The Company Commander is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Directs the logistics for the AA company in support of the company's organic equipment.

(2) Responsible for mentoring the Platoon Commanders and Executive Officer.

(3) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the company.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander and associated staff on the employment of AA unit.

(5) Advises the supported unit commander and associated staff on logistical and maintenance requirements for AA unit.

(6) Develops and implements Risk Management procedures.

(7) Trains and supervises assigned personnel in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

(8) Responsible for the accountability and serviceability of all organic equipment.

(9) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(10) Coordinates and integrates with higher headquarters.

(11) Mentor and develop subordinate leaders to operate independently in support of a unit.

5. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Headquarters and Service Company Commander. The Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company Commander provides the AA Battalion Commander the means to affect command and control of the battalion and supported command group. Through subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S Company Commander provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply, and other support functions to the AA Battalion Commander.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the company.

(2) Camp Commandant for AA battalion.

(3) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.

(5) Employs Risk Management procedures.

(6) Responsible for the overall preventive and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

(7) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training, and tactical operations of AA battalion.

(8) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support.

(9) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(10) Oversees maintenance related activities of AA unit.

(11) Coordinates the staff sections in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

(12) Responsible for movement and security of battalion field trains as well as the Battalion Support Area (BSA).

6. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Assistant Operations Officer. Assists Battalion Operations Officer in duties and task associated with the primary mission of the Assault Amphibian (AA) battalion.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assists Operations Officer with planning, training, coordinating, and supervising employment of units.

(2) Maintains accountability, welfare, and discipline of operations section and assigned equipment.

(3) Serves as the Battalion Unit Training Management Officer.

(4) Serves as the Operation Planning Team (OPT) team leader.

(5) Assists in the preparation of battalion reports and briefs.

(6) Executes Risk Management.

(7) Trains and integrates all agencies within the Alpha and Bravo commands.

(8) Prepared to assume the role of the AA Battalion Operations Officer.

(9) Serves as a Watch Officer in AA battalion Combat Operations Center (COC).

(10) Assists the Operations Officer with coordinating the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

7. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Operations Officer. Field grade officer responsible for coordinating all AA battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to facilitate the AA Battalion Commander's tactical intent.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of an AA Battalion.

(2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.

(3) Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.

(4) Makes operational planning recommendations to the AA Battalion Commander.

(5) Coordinates with naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

(6) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

(7) Responsible for updating the Defenses Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).

(8) Responsible for the short, mid and long term Battalion training plans.

(9) Coordinates and integrates with Division staff.

8. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Logistics Officer. Field grade officer responsible for coordinating all AA battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the AA battalion commander's intent.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, via the six functional areas of logistics, and support operations for an AA battalion.

(2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of AA units.

(3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the AA Battalion Commander.

(4) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(5) Supervises the AA battalion's maintenance programs.

(6) Supervises facilities for the AA Battalion.

(7) Executes tactical movement of Battalion assets from rear area to BSA.

9. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 officer in the Assault Amphibian (AA) battalion. Assumes command in AA Battalion Commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the AA battalion staff and administrative tasks.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Coordinates all actions of the AA battalion staff.

(2) Supervises the staff planning process.

(3) Ensures AA battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.

(4) Maintains information flow to the AA Battalion Commander.

(5) Designated security manager of the AA battalion.

(6) Conducts oversight for all Legal processes of the unit.

(7) Coordinates and integrates with the Division Chief of Staff.

(8) Supervises Officer personnel management within the AA Battalion.

10. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Commanding Officer. The AA Battalion Commander serves as a special staff officer to the Commanding General (CG) of the Marine Division. The AA Battalion Commander also directs the maintenance and logistic trains organic to the AA battalion to support operations as directed by the CG.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the supported unit commander on employment of the AA unit.

(2) Responsible for the accountability and serviceability of all organic equipment.

(3) Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for the AA unit.

(5) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the AA Battalion.

(6) Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.

(7) Leads AA Battalion as an independent maneuver element when directed.

Note: The Assault Amphibian (AA) Battalion has the ability to function as a maneuver element headquarters when provided augmentation from higher headquarters (e.g. Air Officer).

6005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	1000 Level Events	
1803AAV-AMPH-1001	Egress the AAV (S)	6-10
1803AAV-AMPH-1002	Prepare for Amphibious Operations	6-11
1803AAV-AMPH-1003	Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel	6-12
1803AAV-AMPH-1004	Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)	6-13
1803AAV-AMPH-1005	Direct Recovery Operations Afloat	6-14
1803AAV-AMPH-1006	Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping	6-15
1803AAV-AMPH-1007	Execute Shore-to-Shore Operations	6-16
1803AAV-AMPH-1008	Utilize the Personal Flotation Device	6-17

1803AAV-AMPH-1009	Utilize Emergency Breathing Device	6-18
1803AAV-C2-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	6-18
1803AAV-C2-1002	Respond to Signs/Markers	6-19
1803AAV-C2-1003	Operate the AAV C2 System (S/L)	6-20
1803AAV-C2-1004	Control Radio Communications	6-21
1803AAV-C2-1005	Control Submission of Reports (S/L)	6-21
1803AAV-C2-1006	Deliver an Operation Order	6-22
1803AAV-GNRY-1001	Conduct Gun Table I	6-23
1803AAV-GNRY-1002	Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	6-24
1803AAV-GNRY-1003	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)	6-24
1803AAV-GNRY-1004	Create a Fire Plan Sketch	6-25
1803AAV-GNRY-1005	Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)	6-26
1803AAV-GNRY-1006	Engage Targets (S/L)	6-27
1803AAV-GNRY-1007	Direct Unit Fires (S/L)	6-28
1803AAV-SUPT-1001	Brief Supported Unit Commander on AAV Employment	6-30
1803AAV-SUPT-1002	Support Unit Specified Tasks	6-30
1803AAV-TAC-1001	Analyze the Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace	6-31
1803AAV-TAC-1002	Execute Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)	6-32
1803AAV-TAC-1003	Execute Mounted Navigation	6-32
1803AAV-TAC-1004	Employ Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)	6-33
1803AAV-TAC-1005	Lead an AAV Unit in Offensive Operations (S/L)	6-34
1803AAV-TAC-1006	Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations (S/L)	6-35
1803AAV-TAC-1007	Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning	6-37
1803AAV-TRNG-1001	Manage Unit Training Program	6-37
1803AAV-TRNG-1002	Lead an After Action Review (AAR)	6-38
1803AAV-VOPS-1001	Execute Emergency Procedures on Land	6-39
1803AAV-VOPS-1002	Apply Risk Management	6-40
1803AAV-VOPS-1003	Direct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	6-40
1803AAV-VOPS-1004	Direct AAV Unit SL-3 Equipment Maintenance	6-41
1803AAV-VOPS-1005	Direct Operational Checks	6-42
1803AAV-VOPS-1006	Identify a System Malfunction	6-42
1803AAV-VOPS-1007	Direct AAV Unit Tow	6-43
1803AAV-VOPS-1008	Execute Demolition	6-43
1803AAV-VOPS-1009	Execute Maintenance Reconciliation Process	6-44
2000 Level Events		
1803AAV-AMPH-2001	Conduct Surf Survival	6-45
1803AAV-C2-2001	Take part in the Marine Corps Planning Process	6-46
1803AAV-COND-2001	March with a Fighting Load	6-46
1803AAV-SUPT-2001	Perform Duties of a Special Staff Officer	6-47
1803AAV-TAC-2001	Direct Quartering Party Operations	6-48
1803AAV-TRNG-2001	Manage the Unit's Training Program	6-48
1803AAV-TRNG-2002	Develop a Unit Exercise	6-49

6006. 1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS

1803AAV-AMPH-1001: Egress the AAV (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: To reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish orientation.
2. Employ emergency breathing device.
3. Unlock and open hatches.
4. Exit the vehicle.
5. Inflate personal flotation device (PFD).
6. Gain access to the surface.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	SVET	Marine Hours	8	Y

NOTES: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills should be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

EQUIPMENT: Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1803AAV-AMPH-1002: Prepare for Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

BILLETS: Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit and mission.

STANDARD: To facilitate the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct Planning, Embarkation, Rehearsals, Movement, Assault (PERMA) or Embarkation, Movement, Planning, Rehearsals, Assault (EMPRA).
2. Coordinate with landing team.
3. Coordinate with supporting amphibious ship(s).
4. Analyze Modified Surf Index.
5. Analyze Sea State conditions.
6. Analyze beach hydrography/obstacles.
7. Assist in the development of source documents for amphibious operations.
8. Identify time, space, logistics available.
9. Analyze the landing plan.
10. Identify designated Recovery Team(s) (RT) and naval safety boats.
11. Execute inspections/rehearsals.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 Beachmaster Handbook
2. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
3. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803AAV-AMPH-1003: Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To execute a safe and orderly evacuation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat.
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures float.
3. Supervise crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Supervise embarked personnel emergency procedures afloat.
5. Direct execution of emergency distress signals.
6. Monitor and report water level triggers.
7. Direct personnel topside.
8. Conduct a side-to-side transfer.
9. Conduct a rough sea transfer.
10. Perform water survival techniques.
11. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: To complete this task, crewmembers must complete both a side-to-side and a rough sea transfer from a waterborne vehicle. These transfers can occur in any type of water training area, and should not be attempted in actual rough sea conditions unless during an actual emergency.

1803AAV-AMPH-1004: Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle unit, mission, commander's intent, and an amphibious platform.

STANDARD: To embark/land surface assault elements and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Receive the order from higher headquarters.
2. Analyze IPB.
3. Coordinate with Naval staff.
4. Attend pre-sail confirmation brief with naval and supported unit leadership.
5. Develop and issue an operation order.
6. Direct the negotiation of waterway obstacles.
7. Perform embarkation procedures.
8. Secure/unsecure vehicle with lashing.
9. Perform debarkation procedures.
10. Execute launch.
11. Respond to tactical control measures.
12. Respond to commands from Primary/Secondary Control Ship.
13. Perform Wave Guide Officer responsibilities.
14. Transition to shore.
15. Perform duties of Recovery Team (RT).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT:
1. Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.
2. This task can be practiced using the Amphibious Boat Control Tactical Trainer (ABCTT).
3. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Bow Plane. An empty AAV7A1 RAM/RS, without a bow plane in use will nose down as speed increases. Increased speed increases the chance of excess water entering the driver's station and subsequently leading to swamping/sinking of the vehicle if the driver fails to respond by decreasing speed or cross steering the vehicle. This causes an unsafe condition which requires all hatches but the turret hatch to be closed if the bow plane is not in use.

1803AAV-AMPH-1005: Direct Recovery Operations Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Recovery to the nearest safe haven which is considered a beach or an amphibious ship.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AA unit with a disabled AAV in a body of water, associated crews, and SL-3.

STANDARD: To return the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the environment.
2. Assess the situation.
3. Execute troop transfer (if required).
4. Determine waterborne towing method.
5. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.

6. Prepare towing vehicle for towing.
7. Position the recovery vehicle as required.
8. Attach tow lines.
9. Secure designated hatches.
10. Tow disabled vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803AAV-AMPH-1006: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle platoon and amphibious shipping.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Execute planning.
2. Recognize types of amphibious shipping (LPD, LSD, LHA).
3. Direct ship approach techniques.
4. Coordinate with naval personnel.
5. Perform embarkation procedures.
6. Direct vehicle lashing procedures.
7. Direct pre-water operations, preparations, and unlashing procedures.
8. Perform debarkation procedures.
9. Direct launch.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 13-10M Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. U.S Code Title 33 Navigation and Navigable Waters

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803AAV-AMPH-1001 1803AAV-AMPH-1002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803AAV-AMPH-1007: Execute Shore-to-Shore Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Direct the execution of inland water operations and riverine operations.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a water obstacle, personnel and equipment.

STANDARD: To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security posture.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Conduct site analysis.
4. As required, determine speed and direction of current.

5. Assess entry/exit points.
6. Determine/conduct amphibious drift technique as required.
7. Consolidate and determine follow on movements.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803AAV-AMPH-1008: Utilize the Personal Flotation Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed to increase user understanding and knowledge of components of the personal flotation device (PFD) and inspection requirements prior to use. Completion of this task is designed to build comfort and confidence of the individual when employing PFD. This task directly correlates to the Marines ability to negotiate an amphibious environment in the event of an evacuation/egress from an amphibious vehicle at sea.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an waterborne environment, while wearing the combat uniform and PFD.

STANDARD: To maintain buoyancy while moving to the nearest safe haven on the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check PFD for serviceability.
2. Don the PFD.
3. Employ water survival skills.
4. Inflate the PFD by tube or CO2 cartridge.

5. Swim to the nearest safe haven.
6. Maintain inflation as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Inflating the PFD with the CO2 cartridge after it has already been fully or partially inflated by tube can rupture the PFD. CO2 cartridges can be used but their use is not required to complete the task. Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1803AAV-AMPH-1009: Utilize Emergency Breathing Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task familiarizes Marines with the inspection, preparation, utilization and maintenance of emergency breathing devices (EBD).

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a sinking vehicle, personal flotation device (PFD) with EBD, and equipment.

STANDARD: To egress the vehicle and gain access to the surface.(MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check EBD for serviceability.
2. Check EBD for pressure.
3. Prepare EBD for use.
4. Employ EBD to assist in egress.
5. Exhale on assent, do not hold breath.
6. Inflate PFD as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1803AAV-C2-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and an operating area.

STANDARD: To control the movement of vehicle(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ day ground guiding signals.
2. Employ night ground guiding signals.
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals.
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).

1803AAV-C2-1002: Respond to Signs/Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To control Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement/action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to standard beach signs/markers.
2. Respond to standard naval signs/markers.
3. Respond to standard tactical signs/markers.
4. Respond to standard logistical signs/markers.
5. Recognize waterway navigational signs/markers (red right returning).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual-Technical
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Non organic equipment to an AA unit, requires Beach Master Unit or Land Force Support Party support.

1803AAV-C2-1003: Operate the AAV C2 System (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated communication equipment.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of communication and navigation systems within the AAV.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the C2 equipment for operations.
2. Check settings of the C2 equipment.
3. Operate the C2 systems.
4. Shut down the C2 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y

1803AAV-C2-1004: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: To enforce voice radio procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC.
2. Update frequency hopping data using Electronic Remote Fill (ERF), as required.
3. Enforce standard radio procedures.
4. Adhere to local unit call signs and frequencies.
5. Minimize Electro-Magnetic signature.
6. Enforce radio silence as required.
7. Determine the presence of electronic countermeasures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

1803AAV-C2-1005: Control Submission of Reports (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring tactical or administrative information.

STANDARD: To inform higher, adjacent, and supported/supporting units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational or amphibious).
2. Generate or receive report.
3. Determine appropriate C2 system to forward report.
4. Forward report.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

1803AAV-C2-1006: Deliver an Operation Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission from higher headquarters or a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To issue a tactically sound plan that supports higher headquarters intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Deliver warning order
2. Conduct the BAMCIS process.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1803AAV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV weapons system, and all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7, & 12, prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from UGWS.
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove M2 HB .50 cal machine gun from UGWS.
7. Boresight the UGWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	32 rounds per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course Programs of Instruction.
3. Performance step 4 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1803AAV-GNRY-1002: Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK19, M2, or M240 machine gun and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

1803AAV-GNRY-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 9-1040-267-20&P Organizational Maintenance Manual, M257 Grenade Launcher

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1803AAV-GNRY-1004: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle unit in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide interlocking fires and fields of mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate engagement area.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803AAV-GNRY-1005: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a boresighted AAV with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure system switch is set to safe.
2. Lay reticle on center of target.
3. Select appropriate zeroing options from the menu.
4. Engage Targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803AAV-GNRY-1006: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to evaluate the Platoon Commander's ability to engage stationary or moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary vehicle.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons and ammunition.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct fire commands.
4. Conduct immediate/remedial actions if required.
5. Conduct barrel change if required.
6. Conduct reload of weapons systems if required.
7. Execute directed rates of fire.
8. Communicate weapons status.
9. Manual fire if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification.
3. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).

1803AAV-GNRY-1007: Direct Unit Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a task-organized force, tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emplace weapon systems.

2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Conduct Battle Damage Assessment
11. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803AAV-SUPT-1001: Brief Supported Unit Commander on AAV Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission and a command relationship with a supported unit.

STANDARD: To assist with planning by providing estimates of supportability and subject matter expertise.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist the supported unit leader with mission analysis and planning.
2. Task-organize the AAV unit.
3. Brief the vehicle AAV unit's limitations/capabilities.
4. Brief the AAV unit's offensive and defensive considerations.
5. Brief the AAV unit's amphibious employment considerations.
6. Determine and address the logistical requirements.
7. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1803AAV-SUPT-1002: Support Unit Specified Tasks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The AAV platoon is able to provide a myriad of support missions to their supported units, which include casualty evacuation, command and control, fire support team, support by fire, mortars transport, as well as resupply operations. The Platoon Commander should be able to determine supportability based upon the associated specified task.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, an operation order form higher, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Brief AAV capabilities to support CASEVAC, C2, FiST, SBF, EPW, and resupply operations.
3. Identify unit assigned task(s).
4. Determine requirement(s).
5. Task-organize.
6. Advise supported commander on employment techniques.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

1803AAV-TAC-1001: Analyze the Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an intelligence brief, tactical scenario and references.

STANDARD: To exploit enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities and probable courses of action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze the battlespace environment.
2. Analyze the battlespace's effect on operations.
3. Analyze the threat.
4. Analyze threat Course of Action (COA).

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Requires higher or supported headquarters support from S-2/G-2/J-2.

1803AAV-TAC-1002: Execute Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: AAV units are capable of conducting operations in special terrain. Mobility limitations must be considered when employing the unit in jungle, desert, mountainous, urbanized terrains; and cold weather climates.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To employ the vehicle within environmental limitations and without damage to equipment or personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive the IPB.
2. Identify mobility limitations.
3. Consider employment techniques.
4. Considerer maintenance requirements.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803AAV-TAC-1003: Execute Mounted Navigation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, operation order, map, and a navigation device.

STANDARD: To arrive at the designated point(s) within the specified timeframe.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct map study.
2. Create route.
3. Prepare navigation devices (map, TACNAV, DAGR as required).
4. Brief route.
5. Move to a designated point.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803AAV-TAC-1004: Employ Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to provide the AA platoon commander employment considerations of their unit, and individual actions to take, within the execution of larger movement techniques inclusive of: formations, movement techniques, immediate actions and defensive vehicle postures.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit executing operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the unit in response to a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Utilize terrain to avoid exposure to the threat.
2. Utilize dispersion with respect to METT-T.
3. Direct formations.
4. Maintain speed that supports the scheme of maneuver.
5. Respond to threats.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y
Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	2	N

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. The following formations must be demonstrated: column, vee, wedge, echelon left/right, unit on-line, and herringbone.
2. The following movement techniques must be demonstrated: bounding overwatch, successive bounding, and travelling overwatch.

1803AAV-TAC-1005: Lead an AAV Unit in Offensive Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Planning for and execution of offensive operations consist of: movement to contact, attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given operation order from higher and tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To execute the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze IPB.
2. Lead the planning process.
3. Task-organization to best support concept of operations.
4. Select type of attack and form of maneuver based on METT-T.
5. Select movement techniques based on METT-T analysis.
6. Control AAV employment during movements in support of the scheme of maneuver.
7. Direct AAV unit fires in support of concept of operations.
8. Prepare for follow-on missions.
9. Control signature management.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803AAV-TAC-1006: Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order from higher and tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To execute the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Execute planning.
2. Recommend defensive type.
3. Recommend task organization.
4. Direct fire planning.
5. Integrate obstacle plan.
6. Execute offense planning considerations.
7. Conduct leader's recon.
8. Issue order.
9. Occupy defense area.
10. Execute priorities of work and rehearsals.
11. Develop security plan.
12. Develop unit sustainment plan.
13. Achieve decisive contact.
14. Direct AAV unit fires.
15. Submit reports.
16. Direct consolidation and reorganization.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803AAV-TAC-1007: Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and fire support assets.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver with effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify fire support assets.
2. Identify desired effects.
3. Identify fire support coordinating measures.
4. Plan targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions/avenues of approach/avenues of withdrawal.
5. Identify priority targets.
6. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
7. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
8. Integrate updated fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
9. Disseminate fire support plan.
10. Continually refine the fire support plan based on METT-T.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

1803AAV-TRNG-1001: Manage Unit Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an training and readiness manual, Mission Essential Task List (METL), simulated unit, scenario and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure training and evaluation complies with individual and collective standards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop short and mid-range plans as appropriate.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule training cycles.
7. Conduct backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1803AAV-TRNG-1002: Lead an After Action Review (AAR)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: All training exercises have an AAR. It can be executed from within the unit or by a third party that was involved with the training or the evaluation of the training. The AARs formality and scope increase with the command level and the size of the training evolution. An AAR identifies both the surfaces and gaps of an exercise's planning, tactics, combined-arms employment, command and control, communications, survivability, and personnel and logistics support. It highlights lessons learned and identifies alternative solutions. To be more timely and effective, an AAR is executed several times (at logical breakpoints) during the exercise and at the conclusion of the exercise. This allows units to clearly identify and correct deficiencies as they occur, vice at the end of the training evolution.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and a completed event/operation.

STANDARD: To enhance combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Designate area for after action.
2. Account for all unit and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observations of personnel during event.
4. Engage all personnel for inputs.
5. Compile information obtained and submit to higher. (Topic/ Discussion/ Recommendation).

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1803AAV-VOPS-1001: Execute Emergency Procedures on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 month

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated equipment and crew.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of the crew and embarked personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew roll over drills.
3. Evacuate an injured crewmember.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Performance step 3 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1803AAV-VOPS-1002: Apply Risk Management

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit with crews, SL-3 equipment and simulated attached personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crews, embarked personnel, and dismounted personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify and document hazards.
2. Identify, develop, and document the assessment of hazards.
3. Make and document risk decisions.
4. Document and implement controls.
5. Supervise risk management.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803AAV-VOPS-1003: Direct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct PMCS on the vehicle exterior.
2. Direct PMCS on the vehicle engine compartment.
3. Direct PMCS on the vehicle crew station.
4. Direct PMCS on the vehicle troop compartment.
5. Direct PMCS of the weapon systems.
6. Direct PMCS on special tools.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1803AAV-VOPS-1004: Direct AAV Unit SL-3 Equipment Maintenance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with all associated equipment and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability/serviceability of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment to determine accountability/serviceability.
2. Supervise the inventory of SL-3.
3. Annotate SL-3 discrepancies as required.
4. Reconcile SL-3 discrepancies as required.
5. Direct PMCS of SL-3 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. SL-3-07707C/07267C/07268C Components List for Assault Amphibious Vehicle Model 7A1 Family of Vehicles
3. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

1803AAV-VOPS-1005: Direct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit with associated SL-3 and reference(s).

STANDARD: To identify unit's vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct pre-operation checks.
2. Direct at-halt operation checks.
3. Direct pre-water operation checks.
4. Direct during water operation
5. Direct after operation checks.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1803AAV-VOPS-1006: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, simulated scenario, and the reference(s).

STANDARD: To assess the situation and determine course(s) of action(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize a malfunction symptom.
2. Follow the Troubleshooting Symptom Index.
3. Determine course of action and impact on mission.
4. Report all discrepancies to maintenance personnel.
5. Assist maintenance personnel in performance of corrective maintenance and services.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

---

1803AAV-VOPS-1007: Direct AAV Unit Tow

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a scenario, disabled AAV requiring recovery, and an operational AAV with associated crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To assess the situation and determine course(s) of action(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Tow disabled AAV.
5. Disconnect towed vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Performance step 3 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1803AAV-VOPS-1008: Execute Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of vehicle and/or its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove salvageable items.
2. Determine methods of destruction available.
3. Determine the items to be destroyed.
4. Destroy identified equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1803AAV-VOPS-1009: Execute Maintenance Reconciliation Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Maintenance Production Report (MPR) and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To gain an accurate assessment of the unit's readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify elements of reports.
2. Verify discrepancies.
3. Verify job status.
4. Verify parts status.
5. Verify job completion.
6. Report readiness.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

1803AAV-AMPH-2001: Conduct Surf Survival

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation followed by a swim to shore through the surf zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform check of personal flotation device (PFD).
2. Assist with the evacuation of embarked personnel into the ocean.
3. Exit the vehicle.
4. Enter the water with a buddy.
5. Employ PFD.
6. Perform water survival techniques.
7. Perform group survival techniques.
8. Assist swimmers, as required.
9. Swim toward shore with assigned buddy.
10. Swim through the surf zone.
11. Consolidate on the beach.
12. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Group survival techniques consist of the line and the ring techniques.

1803AAV-C2-2001: Take part in the Marine Corps Planning Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit, situation, and desired outcome.

STANDARD: To integrate into a Battalion or higher Staff as an AAV subject matter expert.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Know the six steps of the Marine Corps Planning Process.
2. Know the capabilities of the AAV.
3. Know the logistical requirements of the AAV.
4. Assist in Problem Framing.
5. Assist in Course of Action Development.
6. Assist in Wargaming.
7. Assist in COA Comparison and Decision.
8. Assist in Orders Development.
9. Assist in the transition.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-21.8 Infantry Platoon and Squad
2. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1803AAV-COND-2001: March with a Fighting Load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a

unit movement.

STANDARD: To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

1803AAV-SUPT-2001: Perform Duties of a Special Staff Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit task-organized to a supported organization.

STANDARD: To provide subject matter expertise on AAV employment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recommend task-organization of AAV unit.
2. Supervise organic maintenance support.
3. Supervise organic logistics support.
4. Advise supported commander on AAV employment.
5. Coordinate with staff sections.
6. Coordinate with Naval entities.
7. Assist in planning.
8. Evaluate operations and provide recommendations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1803AAV-TAC-2001: Direct Quartering Party Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation order, personnel, and equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare an assembly area for follow-on forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear area.
5. Direct improvements and security posture.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-21.8 Infantry Platoon and Squad
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803AAV-TRNG-2001: Manage the Unit's Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Operations Officer

GRADES: MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and/or commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To support training plan development.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.

3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop long, mid, and short range training plans.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule training cycles.
7. Execute backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3 Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is taught during formal training at applicable Command and Staff College's and Marine Corps Tactics and Operations Group courses.

1803AAV-TRNG-2002: Develop a Unit Exercise

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Operations Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a training and readiness manual, Mission Essential Task List (METL), simulated unit and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure training and evaluation complies with individual and collective standards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify collective and individual training events from T&R manuals.
2. Identify live, virtual, and constructive training venues.
3. Identify resource requirements.
4. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
5. Develop opposing force plan.
6. Develop training assessment plan.
7. Develop after action review.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3 Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

MOS 1833 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING	7001	7-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	7002	7-2
PREREQUISITES	7003	7-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	7004	7-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	7005	7-12
1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS	7006	7-14

CHAPTER 7

MOS 1833 AMPHIBIOUS ASSAULT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

7000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) Crewmember. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either managed on-the-job training (MOJT) or through resident career progression training (Assault Amphibian Unit Leader Course), distance learning, or Professional Military Education (PME).

7001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1833AAV" indicating that the event is for AAV Crewmembers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Crewmembers are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations	GNRY - Gunnery
TAC - Tactical Operation	COND - Conditioning
TRNG - Training	C2 - Command and Control
SUPT - Support	VOPS - Vehicle Operations

c. Field three - 1000/2000 are for the Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) platform, this field provides numerical sequencing.

7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

7003. PREREQUISITES. The 1833 Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) Crewmember will have completed the Assault Amphibian (AA) Crewmember Course before reporting in at an Assault Amphibian (AA) Battalion.

7004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The Amphibious Assault Vehicle (AAV) Crewmember will complete the AAV Crewmember Course, Assault Amphibian School (AAS), Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AA Crewmember will conduct additional 2000-level training in an AA unit in a variety of billets. 2000-level training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Crewmember. Junior 1833 Crewmember on an AAV. The AAV Crewmember carries out the orders of the AAV Platoon Commander. The Crewmember is familiar with all organic weapons on the AAV, and is responsible for executing all duties commensurate with the Tactical and technical responsibilities as an AAV Crewmember.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to AAV employment.

(2) Licensed to drive the AAV.

(4) Detect threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(5) Assists in AAV operational checks.

(6) Assists with Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the AAV.

(7) Assists in embarking and debarking of supported infantry.

(8) Maintains good order and discipline in the AAV troop compartment.

(9) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the AAV hull.

(10) Assists embarked personnel in AAV evacuation and egress.

(11) Serves as assistant gunner to the AAV Commander.

(12) Familiar in use and operation of AAV weapons systems.

(13) Operates AAV communication suite.

(14) Maintains AAV security.

(15) Proficient in internal vehicle reporting procedures.

(16) Conducts tactical driving maneuvers as part of an AAV unit.

3. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Commander. Senior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV. The AAV Commander leads the crew and is responsible for the maintenance, operation, and AAV employment and associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander employs the weapon systems.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the AAV crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AAV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for submitting combat, admin, and logistical reports to the AA Section leader or higher if required.

(5) Maintains AAV administrative documents.

(6) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and functioning of the AAV.

(7) Employs AAV Weapons system.

(8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Proficient at fire commands.

(10) Proficient at AAV recovery operations.

(11) Trains the Assistant Gunner on the weapon system.

*NOTE: When the AAV is employed by a more senior billet, (e.g., Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant) that member assumes the role of AAV Commander while assigned to that vehicle with command, Tactical control, and weapons employment; administrative responsibility shall still reside to the vehicles assigned AAV Commander.

4. Billet: AAV Assistant Section Leader. The AAV Assistant Section Leader assists in the Tactical employment of the AAV section and is responsible for the maintenance, operation, and AAV employment and associated collateral gear.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the AAV crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AAV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for submitting combat, admin, and logistical reports to the AA Section leader or higher if required.

(5) Maintains AAV administrative documents.

(6) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and functioning of the AAV.

(7) Employs AAV weapons system.

(8) Assist the section leader to direct weapons systems.

(9) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(10) Proficient at fire commands.

(11) Proficient at AAV recovery operations.

5. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Section Leader. Senior 1833 in the AA Section with three or more vehicles. The AA Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in the section. During operations, either in the water or on land, the AA Section Leader maintains control of the tactical movement and maneuver of the AA section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the AA section.

(2) Responsible for embarked personnel within the AA section.

(3) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AA section.

(4) Responsible for the sections vehicle readiness.

(5) Audits AA section's administrative documents.

(6) Executes Unit Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AA section.

(7) Employs AA section's weapons systems.

(8) Proficient at identifying and prioritizing threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

(10) Advises supported unit commander.

(11) Proficient at AA recovery operations.

6. BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, Assault Amphibian Platoon. Senior 1833 and second in command of the AA Platoon. The AA Platoon Sergeant is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles, the platoon's logistics, and associated gear. Advises the AA Platoon Commander on training, welfare, administrative functions, and tactical employment of the AA platoon.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines within the AA platoon.

(2) Responsible for maintaining AAVs and collateral equipment within platoon.

(3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the AA platoon.

(4) Employs (AAV) weapon systems.

(5) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(6) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AA platoon.

(7) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

(8) Advises supported unit commander.

(9) Assumes command in AA Platoon Commanders absence.

(10) Coordinates embarkation of AAVs and AA platoon.

(11) Coordinates logistical support for AA platoon.

(12) Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

(13) Proficient at AAV recovery operations.

7. BILLET: Amphibious Vehicle Crewmember, Command Variant. Junior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Executes AAV Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.

(2) Drives the AAV.

(3) Assist AAV Commander with identifying targets.

(4) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(5) Assists in AAV operational checks.

(6) Assists with Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS).

(7) Assists in embarking and debarking of the infantry.

(8) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the AAV hull.

(9) Assists embarked personnel in AAV evacuation and egress.

(10) Serves as an assistant gunner to the AAV Commander.

(11) Familiar with the use and employment of AAV weapon system.

(12) Operates AAV command and control suite.

(13) Maintains AAV security.

(14) Familiar with AAV command and control equipment and, when equipped, Network on the Move (NOTM).

(15) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

(16) Conducts tactical driving maneuvers as part of an AAV unit.

8. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Commander. Command Variant Senior 1833 Crewmember on the AAV. The AAV Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAV and associated gear. The AAV Commander station mounts the defensive medium machine gun.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the AAV crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AAV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for combat reporting

(5) Maintains AAV administrative documents.

(6) Executes AA Section Leader's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.

(7) Employs medium machine gun in defense of AAV.

(8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Familiar with AAV command and control equipment and when equipped Network on the Move (NOTM).

(10) Proficient in AAV recovery operations.

9. BILLET: Section Leader, Assault Amphibian Command Section. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the AA Section with two or more vehicles, with at least one of the vehicles a Command Variant. The AA Section Leader leads all AAV crews and is responsible for all AAV and associated equipment.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for AAV Crewmembers within AA section.

(2) Responsible for embarked personnel within AA section.

(3) Audits AA section's administrative documents.

(4) Executes supported unit commander's commands related to employment and function of the AA Command Section.

(5) Employs AA section's weapons systems.

(6) Advises supported unit commander on AA capabilities/limitations and employment.

(7) Familiar with AAV command and control equipment.

(8) Familiar with Combat Operations Center (COC) operations

(9) Familiar with Fire Support Control Center (FSCC) operations

10. BILLET: Vehicle Crew Evaluator. The Vehicle Crew Evaluator (VCE) serves as an instructor during training and as an evaluator during qualifications. VCE's must be used by the training unit to evaluate all aspects of gunnery. VCE's are used extensively in establishing and operating gunnery training and in evaluating crew proficiency in both individual skills and crew duties.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Understand all techniques and procedures related to gunnery training exercises.

(2) Trains and evaluates crews on the use of gunnery devices.

(3) Serves as an instructor during AAV gunnery training events during the conduct of the initial gunnery sustainment training.

(4) Performs the duties of an evaluator during qualification events for intermediate and advanced gunnery training.

(5) Records training and qualification information on score sheets and crew records.

11. BILLET: Company Master Gunner. The Company Master Gunner has completed the Master Gunner Common Core course and is responsible to the Company Commander for the training and employment of organic weapons systems.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the Company Commander in all matters pertaining to Assault Amphibian (AA) gunnery and employment of all weapons systems within the company.

(2) Evaluates and grades the company Amphibious Vehicle (AV) crews during their semi-annual pre-qualification tables.

(3) Allocates ammunition based on the company's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan. Reallocates ammunition as needed to support all training requirements.

(4) Serves as company liaison to the battalion on all matters pertaining to range/ Multi-Purpose Range Complex (MPRC) as well as all other ranges and training locations aboard station.

(5) Mentors, advises, and assists the company in AA gunnery sustainment, preparation, and the Gunnery Skills Test (GST).

(6) Serves as the Company Senior Instructor Operator for all gunnery training aids, devices, simulations and simulators (TADSS). The AV Turret Trainer (AV-TT) to ensure that all AV crews qualify through the training program.

12. BILLET: Company Logistics Chief. Second most senior 1833 Crewmember in the AA Company who is responsible for all logistical requirements. He assists the Company Operations Chief and the Executive Officer in the logistical planning of the AA company.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Company Commander on unit logistical requirements.

(2) Coordinates AA company logistical support.

(3) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

(4) Coordinates AA company embarkation plans.

(5) Monitors the Maintenance Process.

(6) Monitors AA company hazardous material section.

(7) Assists the Executive Officer and Company Operations Chief in planning future operations.

(8) Instructs AA company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

(9) Trains AA Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.

(10) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the AA company.

(11) Conducts quartering party operations.

(12) Organize, train, and supervise the AA battalion combat trains during operations.

(13). Assist in camp commandant responsibilities for an AA Bn (H&S).

13. BILLET: Company Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the Assault Amphibian (AA) Company. Advises the AA Company Commander on training and operations of the AA company.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Company Commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.

(2) Coordinates and evaluates AA company individual and unit training.

(3) Coordinates Operations Center setup and operations.

(4) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in the Operation Center.

(5) Coordinates assembly area activities.

(6) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.

(7) Assists the AA Executive Officer in planning future operations.

(8) Advises the AA Company Commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

(9) Instructs AA company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

(10) Trains AA Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.

(11) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the AA company.

(12) Assist in camp commandant responsibilities for an AA Bn (H&S).

14. BILLET: Battalion Master Gunner. The Battalion Master Gunner is the senior Master Gunner billet in the Assault Amphibian (AA) Battalion. Responsible to the AA Battalion Commander for the training and employment of all organic weapons systems. The Battalion Master Gunner oversees and mentors the Company Master Gunners in the performance of their duties.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Battalion Commander and Bn staff on all matters pertaining to employment of all weapons systems within the AA battalion.

(2) Evaluates and grades the AA battalion's crews during qualification.

(3) Allocates ammunition based on the AA battalion's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan. Reallocates ammunition as needed to support all training requirements.

(4) Serves as liaison to range operations on all matters pertaining to range/MPRC, as well as all other ranges/training locations aboard station.

(5) Develops, advises, and assists the Company Master Gunners.

(6) Serves as the Battalion Master Instructor Operator for all gunnery training aids, devices, simulations and simulators (TADSS). The AV Turret Trainer (AV-TT) to ensure that all AV crews qualify through the training program.

15. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the Assault Amphibian battalion logistics section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Logistics Officer on unit logistical requirements.

(2) Organize, train, and supervise the AA battalion combat trains during operations.

(3) Coordinates AA battalion logistical support.

(4) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

(5) Determines logistical requirements for unit training.

(6) Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.

(7) Monitors battalion hazardous material section.

(8) Serves as senior enlisted in the combat trains who supervises synchronization of functions of logistics at all echelons of support.

(9) Develops, coordinates, and supervises the execution of all the internal and external logistical support for the AA battalion as directed by the AA Battalion Commander.

(10) Oversee the professional development of all enlisted Marines within the S-4 through professional military education, experiences, and personal example.

(11) Supervise the maintenance and priorities of work as it pertains to facilities, to include improvements.

(12) Coordinate with Base Installation and Logistics (I&L) for standard upkeep and repairs to AA battalion facilities.

(13) Coordinates Logistics Operations Center (LOC) setup and activities in conjunction with the Operations Center.

(14) Serves as the senior enlisted Marine in LOC support area.

16. BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the Assault Amphibian (AA) battalion operations section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Operations Officer on unit training.

(2) Coordinates AA battalion individual and unit training.

(3) Provides input to amphibious landing plans.

(4) Assists in verifying Defense Readiness Reporting System-Marine Corps (DRRS-MC) data and timely submission.

(5) Provides input into the different echelons of deployment requirements.

(6) Coordinates Combat Operations Center (COC) setup and ensures efficient operation.

(7) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in the Operations Center.

(8) Evaluates individual and unit training.

(9) Coordinates AA Operations Section embarkation plans.

(10) Assists the AA Operations Officer in planning future operations.

(11) Manages, provides career counseling, and assigns all 1833 Marines in the AA battalion.

(12) Manages all required MOS schools and additional duty schools for the AA battalion.

(13) Advises the AA Battalion Commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

(14) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

7005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	1000 Level Events	
1833AAV-AMPH-1001	Egress the AAV (S)	7-14
1833AAV-AMPH-1002	Prepare AAV for Water Operations	7-15
1833AAV-AMPH-1003	Evacuate Embarked Personnel from AAV	7-16
1833AAV-AMPH-1004	Maneuver AAV Afloat	7-17
1833AAV-AMPH-1005	Tow an AAV Afloat	7-18
1833AAV-AMPH-1006	Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping	7-19
1833AAV-AMPH-1007	Utilize the Personal Flotation Device	7-20
1833AAV-AMPH-1008	Utilize Emergency Breathing Device (S)	7-20
1833AAV-C2-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	7-21
1833AAV-C2-1002	Operate the AAV C2 System (S/L)	7-22
1833AAV-GNRY-1001	Conduct Gun Table I	7-23
1833AAV-GNRY-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	7-24
1833AAV-GNRY-1003	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station	7-24
1833AAV-GNRY-1004	Utilize a Range Card (S/L)	7-25
1833AAV-GNRY-1005	Engage Targets (S/L)	7-26
1833AAV-GNRY-1006	Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station	7-28
1833AAV-TAC-1001	Apply Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)	7-29
1833AAV-TAC-1002	Execute Immediate Action Drills (S/L)	7-30
1833AAV-VOPS-1001	Apply Risk Management	7-31
1833AAV-VOPS-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	7-32
1833AAV-VOPS-1003	Conduct Operational Checks	7-32
1833AAV-VOPS-1004	Start the Engine by Alternate Means	7-33
1833AAV-VOPS-1005	Identify a System Malfunction	7-34
1833AAV-VOPS-1006	Embark Personnel onto an AAV	7-34
1833AAV-VOPS-1007	Drive the AAV on Land (S/L)	7-35
1833AAV-VOPS-1008	Tow AAV on Land	7-36
1833AAV-VOPS-1009	Operate Smoke Generation System (S/L)	7-37

1833AAV-VOPS-1010	Conduct Demolition	7-37
2000 Level Events		
1833AAV-AMPH-2001	Prepare for Waterborne Operations	7-38
1833AAV-AMPH-2002	Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel	7-39
1833AAV-AMPH-2003	Control Unit Maneuver Afloat	7-40
1833AAV-AMPH-2004	Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations	7-41
1833AAV-AMPH-2005	Conduct Surf Survival	7-41
1833AAV-AMPH-2006	Respond to a Waterborne Emergency	7-42
1833AAV-C2-2001	Respond to Signs/Markers	7-43
1833AAV-C2-2002	Employ C2 Equipment	7-44
1833AAV-C2-2003	Submit Reports (S/L)	7-45
1833AAV-C2-2004	Prepare Command Communication Suite	7-46
1833AAV-C2-2005	Install a Wire Communication Hot/Gun Loop	7-46
1833AAV-C2-2006	Develop an Operation Order	7-47
1833AAV-C2-2007	Issue a Fragmentary Order	7-47
1833AAV-COND-2001	March with a Fighting Load	7-48
1833AAV-GNRY-2001	Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station	7-49
1833AAV-GNRY-2002	Develop a Range Card (S/L)	7-49
1833AAV-GNRY-2003	Engage Targets (S/L)	7-50
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)	7-52
1833AAV-GNRY-2005	Create a Fire Plan Sketch	7-53
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)	7-54
1833AAV-GNRY-2007	Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)	7-55
1833AAV-SUPT-2001	Brief Infantry on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment	7-57
1833AAV-SUPT-2002	Support Unit Specified Tasks	7-57
1833AAV-SUPT-2003	Direct Recovery Operations	7-58
1833AAV-TAC-2001	Conduct Mounted Navigation	7-59
1833AAV-TAC-2002	Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)	7-60
1833AAV-TAC-2003	Supervise Quartering Party Duties	7-60
1833AAV-TAC-2004	Lead an AA Unit in Offensive Operations (S/L)	7-61
1833AAV-TAC-2005	Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning	7-62
1833AAV-TAC-2006	Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations (S/L)	7-63
1833AAV-TRNG-2001	Evaluate AAV Gunnery	7-64
1833AAV-TRNG-2002	Develop Surface Danger Zones (SDZs)	7-65
1833AAV-TRNG-2003	Design Ranges in Support of Operations	7-66
1833AAV-TRNG-2004	Facilitate Employment of Vehicle Mounted Weapons Systems	7-66
1833AAV-TRNG-2005	Facilitate Simulation Training Program	7-67
1833AAV-TRNG-2006	Manage Gunnery Training Program	7-68
1833AAV-TRNG-2007	Manage Unit Training Program	7-68
1833AAV-TRNG-2008	Develop Unit Exercise	7-69
1833AAV-TRNG-2009	Lead an After Action Review (AAR)	7-70
1833AAV-VOPS-2001	Conduct a Risk Assessment	7-70
1833AAV-VOPS-2002	Initiate Administrative Maintenance Process	7-71
1833AAV-VOPS-2003	Monitor the Maintenance Process	7-71
1833AAV-VOPS-2004	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	7-72
1833AAV-VOPS-2005	Supervise Operational Checks	7-73

7006. 1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS

1833AAV-AMPH-1001: Egress the AAV (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: To reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish orientation.
2. Employ emergency breathing device.
3. Unlock and open hatches.
4. Exit the vehicle.
5. Inflate personal flotation device (PFD).
6. Gain access to the surface

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	SVET	Marine Hours	8	Y

NOTES: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills can be conducted on the AAV while parked at the ramp or during exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than the SVET.

EQUIPMENT: Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1833AAV-AMPH-1002: Prepare AAV for Water Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Vehicle, checklists, order, and equipment.

STANDARD: To ensure vehicle readiness to perform waterborne operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct pre-operations checklist.
2. Conduct pre-water operations checklist.
3. Secure all equipment in the AAV.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

---

1833AAV-AMPH-1003: Evacuate Embarked Personnel from AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with passengers, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To prevent injury or loss of life.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform driver emergency procedures afloat.
2. Perform crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
3. Execute emergency distress signals.
4. Monitor and report water level triggers.
5. Direct personnel topside.
6. Conduct a side-to-side transfer.
7. Conduct a rough sea transfer.
8. Perform water survival techniques.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: To complete this task, crewmembers must complete both a side-to-side and a rough sea transfer from a waterborne vehicle. These transfers can occur in any type of water training area, and should not be attempted in actual rough sea conditions unless during an actual emergency.

1833AAV-AMPH-1004: Maneuver AAV Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and crew.

STANDARD: To safely enter/exit to/from shore without damage to equipment or harm to personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure water tight integrity.
2. Follow land to water procedures.
3. React to waterway navigation signs and markers.
4. Employ water driving techniques.
5. Employ alternate driving techniques.
6. Follow water to land procedures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Bow Plane. An empty AAV7A1 RAM/RS, without a bow plane in use will nose down as speed increases. Increased speed increases the chance of excess water entering the driver's station and subsequently leading to swamping/sinking of the vehicle if the driver fails to respond by decreasing speed or cross steering the vehicle. This causes an unsafe condition which requires all hatches, but the turret hatch to be closed if the bow plane is not in use.

1833AAV-AMPH-1005: Tow an AAV Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Recovery to the nearest safe haven which is considered a beach or an amphibious ship.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and disabled AAV in a body of water, associated crews, pyrotechnics and SL-3.

STANDARD: To return the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the environment/situation.
2. Recognize day/night AAV distress signals.
3. Conduct troop transfer as necessary.
4. Determine waterborne towing method.
5. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
6. Prepare towing vehicle for towing.
7. Position the recovery vehicle in accordance with the appropriate towing method.
8. Attach tow lines.
9. Secure hatches as required.
10. Tow disabled vehicle.
11. Disconnect towing lines when necessary.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833AAV-AMPH-1006: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and amphibious shipping.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize types of amphibious shipping (LPDs, LSDs, LHAs, and LHDs).
2. Perform ship approach techniques.
3. Recognize green/red well.
4. Perform embarkation procedures.
5. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.
6. Unsecure vehicle from lashing assembly.
7. Perform debarkation procedures.
8. Conduct launch.
9. Maneuver within approach lane.
10. Respond to tactical control measures.
11. Transition to shore.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
6. U.S Code Title 33 Navigation and Navigable Waters

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833AAV-AMPH-1007: Utilize the Personal Flotation Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed to increase user understanding and knowledge of components of the personal flotation device (PFD) and inspection requirements prior to use. Completion of this task is designed to build comfort and confidence of the individual when employing PFD. This task directly correlates to the Marine's ability to negotiate an amphibious environment in the event of an evacuation/egress from an amphibious vehicle at sea.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an waterborne environment, while wearing the combat uniform and PFD.

STANDARD: To maintain buoyancy while moving to the nearest safe haven on the surface of the water. (MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check PFD for serviceability.
2. Don the PFD.
3. Employ water survival skills.
4. Inflate the PFD by tube or CO2 cartridge.
5. Swim to the nearest safe haven.
6. Maintain inflation as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Inflating the PFD with the CO2 cartridge after it has already been fully or partially inflated by tube can rupture the PFD. CO2 cartridges can be used but their use is not required to complete the task. Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1833AAV-AMPH-1008: Utilize Emergency Breathing Device (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task familiarizes Marines with the inspection, preparation, utilization and maintenance of emergency breathing devices (EBD).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a sinking vehicle, personal flotation device (PFD) with EBD, and equipment.

STANDARD: To egress the vehicle and gain access to the surface.(MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check EBD for serviceability.
2. Check EBD for pressure.
3. Prepare EBD for use.
4. Employ EBD to assist in egress.
5. Exhale on assent, do not hold breath.
6. Inflate PFD as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1833AAV-C2-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew, signal flags, signal lights, and an operating area.

STANDARD: To control movement of the vehicle(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ day ground guiding signals.
2. Employ night ground guiding signals.
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals.
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles
   TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).

1833AAV-C2-1002: Operate the AAV C2 System (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with communication equipment systems.

STANDARD: To communicate with the AAV crew and other elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the C2 equipment for operations.
2. Operate the C2 equipment.
3. Shut down the C2 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given am AAV, weapons systems, and all associated training devices and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7 & 12, prior to the conduct live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from UGWS.
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove M2 HB .50 cal machine gun from UGWS.

7. Boresight the UGWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	32 rounds per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course Programs of Instruction.
3. Performance step 4 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1833AAV-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given MK19, M240B, and M2 machine guns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240, M240C, M240E1, M240L, M240N

1833AAV-GNRY-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 9-1040-267-20&P Organizational Maintenance Manual, M257 Grenade Launcher

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1833AAV-GNRY-1004: Utilize a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, a completed range card, and UGWS.

STANDARD: To utilize range card to engage targets with Upgunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the range card.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference point.
4. Identify vehicle location.
5. Identify sectors of fire.
6. Identify principal direction of fire (PDF) and final protective line (FPL).
7. Identify dead space.
8. Identify listening/observation point position(s).
9. Identify obstacles.
10. Apply the Detect, Identify, Decide, Engage, Assess (DIDEA) process.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833AAV-GNRY-1005: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that validates operations of the UGWS from a stationary position against a stationary or moving target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons, ammunition, and a fire command, while utilizing the DIDEA process.

STANDARD: To achieve desired weapons and UGWS operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to fire command.
2. Fire UGWS with M2
3. Fire UGWS with MK19.
4. Conduct IA drills with UGWS if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one confirmation engagement during day light conditions and a night shoot.
3. Gunners will utilize a range card to engage targets.

1833AAV-GNRY-1006: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a boresighted AAV with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To center the beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.

3. Adjust sight as required.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make adjustments to T&E as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
4. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) MK281 Mod 1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-TAC-1001: Apply Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to provide the Assault Amphibian (AA) crewmember employment considerations of their vehicle, and individual actions to take, within the conduct of larger offensive or defensive movements inclusive of: formations, movement techniques, immediate actions and defense postures.

BILLETS: Driver

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and associated equipment, while operating as part of a unit conducting operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the AAV in response to a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct formation driving.
2. Utilize terrain to avoid exposure to the threat.
3. Utilize dispersion with respect to METT-T.
4. Maintain speed that supports the scheme of maneuver.
5. Respond to VC commands.
6. Apply basics of the defense.
7. Respond to threats.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y
Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	N

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The following formations must be demonstrated: column, vee, wedge, echelon left/right, unit on-line, and herringbone. The following movement techniques must be demonstrated: bounding over watch, successive bounding, travelling over watch, and defensive positions and procedures.

1833AAV-TAC-1002: Execute Immediate Action Drills (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Immediate action drills include, but are not limited to, the following: Actions upon enemy contact, receiving direct/indirect fire, and mines and obstacles.

BILLETS: Driver

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a driver in an AA unit conducting operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the vehicle in response to enemy contact and terrain without hesitation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Apply direct fire immediate action drills.
2. Apply indirect fire immediate action drills.
3. Apply immediate action drills on mines and defensive tactical obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y
Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	N
Partial	S/L	TDK	Marine Hours	1	N

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-VOPS-1001: Apply Risk Management

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Vehicle (AAV) with crew, SL-3 equipment, and embarked personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crew and embarked personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew roll-over drills.
3. Evacuate an injured crewmember.
4. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicle.
5. Ensure serviceability of recovery equipment during operations.
6. Ensure serviceability of waterborne equipment during operations.
7. Secure equipment/cargo items on the vehicle.
8. Enforce all safety regulations with embarked personnel.
9. Comply with all safety regulations for the C2 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Performance step 3 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1833AAV-VOPS-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Vehicle (AAV) with SL-3 equipment, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform PMCS on the vehicle exterior.
2. Perform PMCS on the vehicle engine compartment.
3. Perform PMCS on the vehicle crew stations.
4. Perform PMCS on the vehicle troop compartment.
5. Perform PMCS on the vehicle while engine is running.
6. Perform PMCS on C2 system.
7. Perform PMCS on SL-3.
8. Report any discrepancies to the vehicle commander.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-VOPS-1003: Conduct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Vehicle (AAV) with SL-3 equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the vehicle is operationally ready.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Preform pre-operation checks.
2. Perform at-halt operation checks.
3. Perform pre-water operation checks.
4. Perform during water operation checks.
5. Perform after operation checks.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-VOPS-1004: Start the Engine by Alternate Means

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibian Vehicle (AAV).

STANDARD: To place the vehicle in an operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Follow the pre-operation checklist.
2. Follow slave start procedures, as required.
3. Follow tow start procedures, as required.
4. Apply freezing conditions starting procedures, as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-VOPS-1005: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Vehicle (AAV) and reference(s).

STANDARD: To report discrepancies to vehicle commander and/or maintenance personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize a malfunction symptom on Driver's Display Module(DDM).
2. Recognize a malfunction symptom.
3. Follow the Troubleshooting Symptom Index.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-VOPS-1006: Embark Personnel onto an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV conducting operations and a personnel manifest.

STANDARD: To gain accountability while following all safety measures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist the AAV Commander with administering the safety brief.
2. Direct embarked personnel to stow all gear and equipment.
3. Direct embarked personnel to comply with safety requirements/procedures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-VOPS-1007: Drive the AAV on Land (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew.

STANDARD: To negotiate various types of terrain/obstacles with no damage to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Start the AAV (Slave Start, if required).
2. Utilize vision enhancer as required.
3. Determine direction of movement.
4. Determine location of terrain, personnel, and other vehicles.
5. Negotiate terrain.
6. Negotiate obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 8400.6 Licensing Procedures for Ordnance Vehicles
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

1833AAV-VOPS-1008: Tow AAV on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibian Vehicle (AAV) requiring recovery, and an operational AAV with crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To move the disabled AAV to the nearest collection point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Tow disabled AAV.
5. Disconnect towed vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Performance step 3 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1833. See Appendix F for further detail.

1833AAV-VOPS-1009: Operate Smoke Generation System (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew and associated SL-3.

STANDARD: To obscure the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the vehicle for smoke generation use.
2. Operate the system.
3. Shutdown the system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	0.50	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-VOPS-1010: Conduct Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of vehicle and/or its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove salvageable items.
2. Determine methods of destruction available.
3. Determine the items to be destroyed.
4. Destroy identified equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-AMPH-2001: Prepare for Waterborne Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AA unit, mission with commander's intent, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of equipment and personnel prior to conducting operations in water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct operational planning.
2. Conduct Surf Observation (SUROB) report.

3. Assess sea state condition.
4. Assess Modified Surf Index (MSI).
5. Submit report(s), as required.
6. Conduct risk assessment.
7. Verify load plan.
8. Verify completion of operational checks.
9. Identify designated Recovery Team(s) (RT) and safety boats.
10. Verify issue of personal flotation devices (PFD) with supplemental emergency breathing devices (SEBD).
11. Deliver Embarked Troop Brief (ETB).
12. Supervise emergency procedure rehearsals.
13. Submit personnel manifests.
14. Verify positive radio communication with all participating units.
15. Perform duties as splash team leader.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 Beachmaster Handbook
2. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
3. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833AAV-AMPH-2002: Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat.
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures afloat.

3. Supervise crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Supervise embarked personnel emergency procedures afloat.
5. Direct execution of emergency distress signals.
6. Monitor and report water level triggers.
7. Direct personnel topside.
8. Conduct a side-to-side transfer.
9. Conduct a rough sea transfer.
10. Perform water survival techniques.
11. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: To complete this task, evacuated personnel must complete both a side-to-side and a rough sea transfer from a waterborne vehicle. These transfers can occur in any type of water training area, and should not be attempted in actual rough sea conditions unless during an actual emergency.

1833AAV-AMPH-2003: Control Unit Maneuver Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, commander's intent, and an amphibious platform.

STANDARD: To embark/land surface assault elements and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Receive the order.
2. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
4. Secure vehicles with lashing assembly.
5. Perform debarkation procedures.
6. Conduct tactical launch.
7. Maneuver within approach lane.
8. Perform Wave Guide Officer responsibilities.
9. Respond to tactical control measures.
10. Transition to shore.
11. Perform duties of Recovery Team (RT).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: This task can be practiced using the Amphibious Boat Control Tactical Trainer (ABCTT). AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833AAV-AMPH-2004: Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is to address inland water crossing and riverine operations.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a water obstacle, personnel and equipment.

STANDARD: To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security posture.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Conduct site analysis.
4. Determine current velocity as required.
5. Determine slope of entry/exit points.
6. Determine/conduct amphibious drift technique as required.
7. Consolidate.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833AAV-AMPH-2005: Conduct Surf Survival

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation followed by a swim to shore through the surf zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform check of personal flotation device (PFD).
2. Assist with the evacuation of embarked personnel into the ocean.
3. Exit the vehicle.
4. Enter the water with a buddy.
5. Employ PFD.
6. Perform water survival techniques.
7. Perform group survival techniques.

8. Assist swimmers, as required.
9. Swim toward shore with assigned buddy.
10. Swim through the surf zone.
11. Consolidate on the beach.
12. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Group survival techniques consist of the line and the ring techniques.

1833AAV-AMPH-2006: Respond to a Waterborne Emergency

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task familiarizes AA unit leader with the actions to take when a vehicle within their section goes into waterborne emergency situation.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a combat loaded AA unit in a waterborne environment, and a distressed vehicle with passengers.

STANDARD: To provide recovery assistance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Evaluate the situation.
2. Report emergency situation to higher.
3. Determine support requirement.

4. Implement course of action.
5. Assess the situation.
6. Communicate to higher and adjacent.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833AAV-C2-2001: Respond to Signs/Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To control AAV movement/action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to standard beach signs/markers.
2. Respond to standard naval signs/markers.
3. Respond to standard tactical signs/markers.
4. Respond to standard logistical signs/markers.
5. Respond to standard waterway navigational signs/markers (red right returning).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual-Technical
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1

5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Non-organic equipment to an AA unit, requires Beach Master Unit or Land Force Support Party support.

1833AAV-C2-2002: Employ C2 Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: To submit/ receive reports and to enforce communication procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC.
2. Update Frequency Hopping data using Electronic Remote Fill (ERF), as required.
3. Enforce standard radio procedures.
4. Adhere to local unit call signs and frequencies.
5. Enforce radio silence as required.
6. Determine the presence of Electronic Countermeasures (ECM).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-C2-2003: Submit Reports (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring information.

STANDARD: To inform higher headquarters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational or amphibious).
2. Generate report.
3. Forward report.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

1833AAV-C2-2004: Prepare Command Communication Suite

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7.

STANDARD: To provide an operational system to the supported unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Account for system components.
2. Conduct PMCS of equipment.
3. Power-up APU.
4. Power-up communications suite.
5. Operate TOCNET.
6. Secure system after operation.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS)

1833AAV-C2-2005: Install a Wire Communication Hot/Gun Loop

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given two or more stationary AAVs and communication wire.

STANDARD: To establish communications between vehicles without emitting radio signals.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure vehicle master power switch is set to 'ON'.
2. Turn on AM-7162.
3. Connect one wire end to each telephone/remote post on the AM-7162.
4. Run connected wire to the next AAV and connect in the same manner.
5. Conduct a communications check external to the AAV to verify that the last loop is operational.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. ATP 6-02.53 Techniques for Tactical Radio Operations
2. TM 08636A-14/1A Operating and Maintenance Instructions with Parts Breakdown - Intercommunication Set AN/VIC-2

1833AAV-C2-2006: Develop an Operation Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission from higher headquarters or a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To issue a tactically sound plan that supports higher headquarters intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct planning and analysis.
2. Utilize the IPB.
3. Conduct METT-T analysis.
4. Determine assets available.
5. Issue Warning Order.
6. Conduct reconnaissance.
7. Coordinate with supported/supporting assets.
8. Complete planning.
9. Build terrain model/overlay.
10. Communicate the order to unit.
11. Supervise preparation and execution.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1833AAV-C2-2007: Issue a Fragmentary Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To provide direction and guidance to crew/unit which supports commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine areas from the HHQ order that apply.
2. Issue the Warning Order.
3. Update situation and provide additional information.
4. Build terrain model/overlay.
5. Communicate the Fragmentary Order.
6. Supervise preparation and execution.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1833AAV-COND-2001: March with a Fighting Load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

STANDARD: To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1833. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

1833AAV-GNRY-2001: Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, inhibit zone aligning tool, and references.

STANDARD: To establish safe and effective fields of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Confirm the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Confirm Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths.
4. Confirm Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool.

1833AAV-GNRY-2002: Develop a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV in a defensive position, and a scenario.

STANDARD: To depict the battlespace, geometries of fire, and enemy situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify vehicle location.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference points.
4. Identify sectors of fire.
5. Identify PDF and FPL.
6. Identify dead space.
7. Identify listening/observation point position.
8. Identify obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833AAV-GNRY-2003: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given AAV mounted weapons, fire commands, multiple targets and a scenario.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct immediate/remedial actions if required.
4. Conduct barrel change if required.
5. Conduct reload of weapon systems if required.
6. Execute directed rates of fire if required.
7. Communicate weapon status.
8. Manual fire if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	4	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine

A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

1833AAV-GNRY-2004: Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Vehicle Commander to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated crew and equipment, a tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ the crew effectively in support of concept of operations during direct fire engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate weapon status to section leader.
2. Conduct the DIDEA process/Issue Fire Commands.
3. Communicate engagement criteria with crew.
4. Direct weapons rates of fire.
5. Orchestrate ammunition replenishment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, (1) familiarization, (2) evaluation. Individual will operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-GNRY-2005: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate engagement area.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-GNRY-2006: Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
2. Establish target priorities.
3. Establish target reference points (TRPs).
4. Define engagement areas (EAs).
5. Identify phase lines and trigger points.
6. Assign sectors of fires.

7. Issue appropriate fire commands.
8. Control rates of fire.
9. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833AAV-GNRY-2007: Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons are employed with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide engagement criteria.
2. Issue appropriate fire commands.
3. Control rates of fire.
4. Establish target priorities.
5. Conduct proper maneuver.
6. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV

A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	54 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tanks/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-SUPT-2001: Brief Infantry on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mechanized infantry mission and supported unit.

STANDARD: To properly employ AA unit in support of the concept of operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Brief the vehicle limitations/capabilities.
2. Brief the vehicle offense/defense employment.
3. Brief the weapons tactical employment.
4. Brief C7 capabilities/limitations.
5. Brief the logistical requirements.
6. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1833AAV-SUPT-2002: Support Unit Specified Tasks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The AAV platoon is able to provide a myriad of support missions to their supported units, which include casualty evacuation, command and control, fire support team, support by fire, mortars transport, as well as resupply operations. The unit leader should be able to determine supportability based upon the associated specified task.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, an operation order from higher, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in the planning process.
2. Brief AAV capabilities to support CASEVAC, C2, FiST, SBF, EPW, and resupply operations.
3. Identify unit assigned task(s).
4. Determine requirement(s).
5. Task-organize.
6. Advise supported commander on employment techniques.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

1833AAV-SUPT-2003: Direct Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled/mired AAV and operational AAVs, with crews, and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess situation.
2. As required, provide security.
3. Identify types of assets required.
4. As required, submit reports/requests.
5. Prepare disabled/mired vehicle.
6. Perform recovery procedures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Use of a capable recovery platform is optional.
2. Recovery operations include all types of environments, land and water.

1833AAV-TAC-2001: Conduct Mounted Navigation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, operations order, designated point(s), map, and a navigation device.

STANDARD: To arrive at the designated point(s) within the specified timeframe.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct map study.
2. Create route.
3. Prepare navigation devices (map, DAGR as required).
4. Brief route.
5. Move to a designated point.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-TAC-2002: Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: ACV units are capable of conducting operations in special terrain. Mobility limitations must be considered when employing the unit in jungle, desert, mountainous, urbanized terrains, and cold weather climates during command and control in a denied or degraded environment (C2D2E).

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To exploit vehicle capabilities within environmental limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive IPB.
2. Identify mobility limitations.
3. Consider employment techniques.
4. Considerer maintenance requirements.

5. Install special mission kit(s) as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-TAC-2003: Supervise Quartering Party Duties

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation order, and quartering party.

STANDARD: To prepare an assembly area for follow-on forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear area.
5. Direct improvements and security posture.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833AAV-TAC-2004: Lead an AA Unit in Offensive Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Planning for and execution of offensive operations consist of movement to contact, mechanized attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in IPB.
2. Participate in the planning process.
3. Recommend task-organization to best support concept of operations.
4. Select type of attack and formation maneuver based on METT-T.
5. Advise on movement technique.
6. Control AAV employment during movements.
7. Control signature management.
8. Direct AA unit fires.
9. Prepare for follow-on missions.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-TAC-2005: Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and fire support assets.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver with effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify fire support assets.
2. Identify desired effects.
3. Identify fire support coordinating measures.
4. Plan targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions, avenues of approach, and avenues of withdrawal.
5. Identify priority targets.
6. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
7. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
8. Integrate updated fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
9. Disseminate fire support plan.
10. Continually refine the fire support plan based on METT-T.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

1833AAV-TAC-2006: Lead an AA Unit in Defensive Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver while achieving commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Execute planning.
2. Recommend defensive type.
3. Recommend task organization.
4. Direct fire planning.
5. Integrate obstacle plan.
6. Execute offense planning considerations.
7. Conduct leader's recon.
8. Issue order.
9. Occupy defense area.
10. Execute priorities of work and rehearsals.
11. Develop security plan.
12. Develop unit sustainment plan.
13. Achieve decisive contact.
14. Direct AAV unit fires.
15. Submit Reports.
16. Direct consolidation and reorganization.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-TRNG-2001: Evaluate AAV Gunnery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Vehicle Crew Evaluator

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV unit, simulations, ammunition, evaluation material, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To identify gunnery training effectiveness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Enforce gunnery training standards.
2. Train and evaluate GT-I and GT-II.
3. Train and augment evaluation of individuals/crews conducting weapon systems qualification.
4. Conduct gunnery AAR.
5. Maintain gunnery records management.
6. Perform Instructor Operator (IO)/Senior Instructor Operator (SIO) responsibilities.
7. Perform other duties as directed by the Master Gunner.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet
2. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

1833AAV-TRNG-2002: Develop Surface Danger Zones (SDZs)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement to conduct a live-fire training event.

STANDARD: To ensure all expended ordnance falls within a designated safe area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify weapon systems and ammunition.
2. Construct weapon systems and ammunition applicable Surface Danger Zone (SDZ).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety

1833AAV-TRNG-2003: Design Ranges in Support of Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the requirement to conduct training in the absence of preplanned ranges.

STANDARD: To accomplish safe and effective standards based training.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with external agencies as required.

2. Coordinate with higher headquarters.
3. Apply range regulations.
4. Develop and implement control measures.
5. Construct ranges.
6. Establish communication requirements in support of range operations.
7. Determine resource requirements in support of range operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCO 1553_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
3. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety
4. MCO 8020.10_ Marine Corps Explosives Safety Management Program
5. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

1833AAV-TRNG-2004: Facilitate Employment of Vehicle Mounted Weapons Systems

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit preparing to conduct gunnery qualification.

STANDARD: To engage threats.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the geometry of fires of individual weapons in support of maneuver.
2. Identify methods of fire and control.
3. Identify limitations/capabilities of vehicle mounted weapons.
4. Identify considerations in the employment of vehicle obscuration.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
7. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live-fire (Gate to Live-Fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1833AAV-TRNG-2005: Facilitate Simulation Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit annual training plan.

STANDARD: To achieve set standards through simulation prior to the use of actual vehicles, weapons, and ammunition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training hardware.
2. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training software.
3. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training scenarios.
4. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training facilities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Master, Senior, and Instructor Operator Certificate for Simulator.

1833AAV-TRNG-2006: Manage Gunnery Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given unit annual training plan.

STANDARD: To maintain gunnery proficiency.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify requirements for the short, mid, long-range training plans.
2. Plan range/training area availability in RFMSS.
3. Track, forecast, and submit ammunition requests in TAMIS.
4. Supervise implementation of the unit gunnery training program.
5. Determine the units gunnery proficiency and formulate corrective action.
6. Supervise all testing on all GST task specific to their weapon platform.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-TRNG-2007: Manage Unit Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop short and mid-range plans as appropriate.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule training cycles.
7. Conduct backward planning.

8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833AAV-TRNG-2008: Develop Unit Exercise

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify collective and individual training events from T&R manuals.
2. Identify live, virtual, and constructive training venues.
3. Identify resource requirements.
4. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
5. Develop opposing force plan.
6. Develop training assessment plan.
7. Develop after action review.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833AAV-TRNG-2009: Lead an After Action Review (AAR)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and a completed event/operation.

STANDARD: To enhance combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Designate area for after action.
2. Account for all unit and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observations of personnel during event.
4. Engage all personnel for inputs.
5. Compile information obtained and submit to higher (Topic/ Discussion/ Recommendation).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
2. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833AAV-VOPS-2001: Conduct a Risk Assessment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given scenario and environment.

STANDARD: To identify and mitigate hazards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify and document hazards.
2. Identify, develop, and document the assessment of hazards.
3. Make and document risk decisions.
4. Document and implement controls.
5. Supervise risk management.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-VOPS-2002: Initiate Administrative Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, identified discrepancy, and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To ensure maintenance action items are recorded for repair.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open service request in GCSS-MC.
2. Create task in GCSS-MC.
3. Submit to organizational maintenance.
4. Report discrepancy.
5. Complete equipment service requests.
6. Verify discrepancy is documented on the Maintenance Production Report (MPR).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: GCSS Simulator

1833AAV-VOPS-2003: Monitor the Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Reconciliation is a formal process designed to bring together the operator and maintenance section. This process is designed to ensure that all maintenance discrepancies are properly identified and captured within GCSS-MC in an effort to gain a better understanding of vehicle readiness as it relates to the operational environment.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Maintenance Production Report and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To ensure completion of preventative/corrective maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconcile discrepancies.
2. Reconcile job status.
3. Reconcile parts status.
4. Reconcile job completion.
5. Close task upon completion.
6. Reconcile SL-3.
7. Report readiness.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1833AAV-VOPS-2004: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To ensure all required PMCS is conducted.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify PMCS of the vehicle components are completed as required.
2. Verify PMCS of the weapon systems are completed.
3. Verify PMCS of the special tools are completed.
4. Verify lubrication is completed.
5. Conduct reconciliation.
6. Verify operational checklists are completed.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)

2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

1833AAV-VOPS-2005: Supervise Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with crew.

STANDARD: To verify operations status/report discrepancies.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify completion of pre-operation checklist.
2. Verify completion of during operation checklist.
3. Verify completion of at-halt operation checklist.
4. Verify completion of pre-water operation checklist.
5. Verify completion of after operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

MOS 1803 AMPHIBIOUS COMBAT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING	8001	8-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	8002	8-2
PREREQUISITES	8003	8-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	8004	8-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	8005	8-8
1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS	8006	8-10

CHAPTER 8

MOS 1803 AMPHIBIOUS COMBAT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

8000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either managed on-the-job training (MOJT) or through resident learning, distance learning, or Professional Military Education (PME).

8001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1803ACV" indicating that the event is for ACV Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for ACV Officers are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations	C2 - Command and Control
COND - Conditioning	GNRY - Gunnery
SUPT - Support	TAC - Tactical Operation
TRNG - Training	VOPS - Vehicle Operations

c. Field three - 1000/2000 are for the Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) platform, this field provides numerical sequencing.

8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

8003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine ACV Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA and Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibious School, Camp Pendleton, CA.

8004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The ACV Officer will complete the Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon

graduation, the ACV Officer will execute additional 2000-level training in an Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. 2000-level training continues through completion of MOJT and Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar, and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Amphibious Combat Vehicle Platoon Commander. The Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) Platoon Commander is the subject matter expert on ACV operations. The ACV Platoon Commander is responsible for the vehicles and crews of the ACV platoon, and subsequently responsible for training qualified crews, maintaining crew integrity, performing the Mission Essential Tasks (METs) assigned by the Company Commander. The Platoon Commander advises the Naval/Infantry Commander on the deployment, integration, and tactical employment of the ACV Platoon. The ACV Platoon Commander directs the maneuver and fires of the platoon in accordance with the intent of the Infantry Commander.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks that support section, crew, and individual objectives.

(2)Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.

(3) Maintain the welfare and discipline of assigned platoon.

(4) Coordinate with supported unit commander on the roles and employment of ACV unit.

(5) Coordinate with supported unit commander on command and control (C2) capabilities.

(6) Manages the preventive and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated SL-3/SL-4 equipment.

(7) Communicates with higher, adjacent, and supported/supporting commands using organic wired and wireless systems.

(8) Proficient in battle tracking and submitting reports.

(9) Directs CASEVAC operations.

(10) Directs movement techniques and formations.

(11) Directs operational safety procedures; develops and implements operational risk mitigation.

(12) Familiar with the employment of all weapons organic to ACV platoon.

(13) Supervise organic logistics and advises supported commander on logistical requirements.

(14) Coordinates the employment of ACV Platoon as a component of the naval force throughout littoral operations.

(15) Directs the preparation of platoon through Pre-Combat Checks (PCCs) and Pre-Combat Inspections (PCIs).

(16) Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a larger force.

3. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Company Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 in the AA Company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Recommends operational planning and training considerations to the Company Commander.

(2) Maintain the accountability, functionality, and discipline of the company and assigned equipment.

(3) Supervises unit training and operations.

(4) Supervises range operations.

(5) Supervises unit logistical support requirements.

(6) Trains and mentors ACV Platoon Commanders in performance of duties.

(7) Supervises the conduct of ancillary training events.

(8) Supervises the company's embarkation training and planning.

(9) Develops and implements Risk Management.

(10) Mentor and develop subordinate leaders to operate independently in support of a unit.

4. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Company Commander. The senior 1803 in the AA Company. The Company Commander is responsible for all equipment and personnel assigned to the company. The Company Commander is proficient with all T/O weapons within the company and is well versed on their employment. Additionally, the Company Commander is responsible for supporting the Mission Essential Tasks (METs) assigned by the Battalion Commander. The discipline, morale, and welfare of Marines within the company are the responsibilities of the Company Commander. The AA Company Commander supports the commanding officer of the supported infantry regiment or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The AA Company Commander leads one or more AA platoons and a maintenance platoon. The Company Commander is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Directs the logistics for the AA company in support of the company's organic equipment ACV.

(2) Responsible for mentoring the Platoon Commanders and Executive Officer.

(3) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the company.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander and associated staff on the employment of AA unit.

(5) Advises the supported unit commander and associated staff on logistical and maintenance requirements for AA unit.

(6) Develops and implements Risk Management procedures.

(7) Trains and supervises assigned personnel in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

(8) Responsible for the accountability and serviceability of all organic equipment.

(9) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(10) Coordinates and integrates with higher headquarters.

(11) Mentor and develop subordinate leaders to operate independently in support of a unit.

5. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Headquarters and Service Company Commander. The Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company Commander provides the AA Battalion Commander the means to affect command and control of the battalion and supported command group. Through subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S Company Commander provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply, and other support functions to the AA Battalion Commander.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the company.

(2) Camp Commandant for AA battalion.

(3) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.

(5) Employs Risk Management procedures.

(6) Responsible for the overall preventive and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

(7) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training, and tactical operations of AA battalion.

(8) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support.

(9) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(10) Oversees maintenance related activities of AA unit.

(11) Coordinates the staff sections in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

(12) Responsible for movement and security of battalion field trains as well as the Battalion Support Area (BSA).

6. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Assistant Operations Officer. Assists Battalion Operations Officer in duties and task associated with the primary mission of the Assault Amphibian (AA) battalion.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assists Operations Officer with planning, training, coordinating, and supervising employment of units.

(2) Maintains accountability, welfare, and discipline of operations section and assigned equipment.

(3) Serves as the Battalion Unit Training Management Officer.

(4) Serves as the Operation Planning Team (OPT) team leader.

(5) Assists in the preparation of battalion reports and briefs.

(6) Executes Risk Management.

(7) Trains and integrates all agencies within the Alpha and Bravo commands.

(8) Prepared to assume the role of the AA Battalion Operations Officer.

(9) Serves as a Watch Officer in AA battalion Combat Operations Center (COC).

(10) Assists the Operations Officer with coordinating the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

7. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Operations Officer. Field grade officer responsible for coordinating all AA battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to facilitate the AA Battalion Commander's tactical intent.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of an AA Battalion.

(2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.

(3) Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.

(4) Makes operational planning recommendations to the AA Battalion Commander.

(5) Coordinates with naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

(6) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

(7) Responsible for updating the Defenses Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).

(8) Responsible for the short, mid and long term Battalion training plans.

(9) Coordinates and integrates with Division staff.

8. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Logistics Officer. Field grade officer responsible for coordinating all AA battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the AA battalion commander's intent.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, via the six functional areas of logistics, and support operations for an AA battalion.

(2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of AA units.

(3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the AA Battalion Commander.

(4) Coordinates the employment of AA unit with naval vessels.

(5) Supervises the AA battalion's maintenance programs.

(6) Supervises facilities for the AA Battalion.

(7) Executes tactical movement of Battalion assets from rear area to BSA.

9. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 officer in the Assault Amphibian (AA) battalion. Assumes command in AA Battalion Commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the AA battalion staff and administrative tasks.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Coordinates all actions of the AA battalion staff.

(2) Supervises the staff planning process.

(3) Ensures AA battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.

(4) Maintains information flow to the AA Battalion Commander.

(5) Designated security manager of the AA battalion.

(6) Conducts oversight for all Legal processes of the unit.

(7) Coordinates and integrates with the Division Chief of Staff.

(8) Supervises Officer personnel management within the AA Battalion.

10. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Battalion Commanding Officer. The AA Battalion Commander serves as a special staff officer to the Commanding General (CG) of the Marine Division. The AA Battalion Commander also directs the maintenance and logistic trains organic to the AA battalion to support operations as directed by the CG.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the supported unit commander on employment of the AA unit.

(2) Responsible for the accountability and serviceability of all organic equipment.

(3) Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for the AA unit.

(5) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the AA Battalion.

(6) Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.

(7) Leads AA Battalion as an independent maneuver element when directed.

Note: The Assault Amphibian (AA) Battalion has the ability to function as a maneuver element headquarters when provided augmentation from higher headquarters (e.g. Air Officer).

8005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	1000 Level Events	
1803ACV-AMPH-1001	Egress the ACV (S)	8-10
1803ACV-AMPH-1002	Prepare for Amphibious Operations	8-11
1803ACV-AMPH-1003	Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel	8-12
1803ACV-AMPH-1004	Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)	8-13
1803ACV-AMPH-1005	Direct Recovery Operations Afloat	8-14

1803ACV-AMPH-1006	Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping	8-15
1803ACV-AMPH-1007	Execute Shore-to-Shore Operations	8-16
1803ACV-AMPH-1008	Utilize the Personal Flotation Device	8-17
1803ACV-AMPH-1009	Utilize Emergency Breathing Device	8-18
1803ACV-C2-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	8-18
1803ACV-C2-1002	Respond to Signs and Markers	8-19
1803ACV-C2-1003	Operate the ACV C2 System (S/L)	8-20
1803ACV-C2-1004	Control Radio Communications	8-21
1803ACV-C2-1005	Control the Submission of Reports (S/L)	8-21
1803ACV-C2-1006	Deliver an Operation Order	8-22
1803ACV-GNRY-1001	Conduct Gun Table I	8-23
1803ACV-GNRY-1002	Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	8-24
1803ACV-GNRY-1003	Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)	8-24
1803ACV-GNRY-1004	Create a Fire Plan Sketch	8-25
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station	8-26
1803ACV-GNRY-1006	Engage Targets (S/L)	8-27
1803ACV-GNRY-1007	Direct Unit Fires (S/L)	8-29
1803ACV-SUPT-1001	Brief Supported Unit Commander on ACV Employment	8-30
1803ACV-SUPT-1002	Support Unit Specified Tasks	8-31
1803ACV-TAC-1001	Analyze the Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace (IPB)	8-32
1803ACV-TAC-1002	Execute Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)	8-32
1803ACV-TAC-1003	Execute Mounted Navigation	8-34
1803ACV-TAC-1004	Employ Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)	8-34
1803ACV-TAC-1005	Lead ACV unit in Offensive Operations	8-35
1803ACV-TAC-1006	Lead an ACV Unit in Defensive Operations	8-37
1803ACV-TAC-1007	Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning	8-38
1803ACV-TRNG-1001	Manage Unit's Training Program	8-38
1803ACV-TRNG-1002	Lead an After Action Review (AAR)	8-39
1803ACV-VOPS-1001	Execute Emergency Procedures on Land	8-40
1803ACV-VOPS-1002	Apply Risk Management	8-40
1803ACV-VOPS-1003	Direct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	8-41
1803ACV-VOPS-1004	Direct ACV unit SL-3 Equipment Maintenance	8-42
1803ACV-VOPS-1005	Direct Operational Checks	8-42
1803ACV-VOPS-1006	Identify a System Malfunction	8-43
1803ACV-VOPS-1007	Direct ACV Unit Tow	8-44
1803ACV-VOPS-1008	Execute Demolition	8-44
1803ACV-VOPS-1009	Monitor the Maintenance Process	8-45
2000 Level Events		
1803ACV-AMPH-2001	Conduct Surf Survival	8-46
1803ACV-C2-2001	Take part in the Marine Corps Planning Process	8-47
1803ACV-COND-2001	March with a Fighting Load	8-48
1803ACV-SUPT-2001	Perform Duties of a Special Staff Officer	8-48
1803ACV-TAC-2001	Direct Quartering Party Operations	8-49
1803ACV-TRNG-2001	Manage the Unit's Training Program	8-49
1803ACV-TRNG-2002	Develop a Unit Exercise	8-50

8006. 1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS

1803ACV-AMPH-1001: Egress the ACV (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged ACV.

STANDARD: To reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish orientation.
2. Employ emergency breathing device.
3. Unfasten five point harness.
4. Open crew hatches.
5. Fold screen (if required).
6. Fold seat or headrest (if required).
7. Exit vehicle.
8. Inflate personal flotation device (PFD).
9. Gain access to the surface.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	SVET	Marine Hours	8	Y

NOTES: Egress drills can be conducted on the ACV while parked at the ramp or during exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET.

EQUIPMENT: Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1803ACV-AMPH-1002: Prepare for Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

BILLETS: Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian (AA) unit and mission.

STANDARD: To facilitate the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct Planning, Embarkation, Rehearsals, Movement, Assault (PERMA) or Embarkation, Movement, Planning, Rehearsals, Assault (EMPRA).
2. Coordinate with landing team.
3. Coordinate with supporting amphibious ship(s).
4. Analyze Modified Surf Index.
5. Analyze Sea State conditions.
6. Analyze beach hydrography/obstacles.
7. Assist in the development of source documents for amphibious operations.
8. Identify time, space, and logistics available.
9. Analyze the landing plan.
10. Identify designated Recovery Team(s) (RT) and safety boats.
11. Execute inspections/rehearsals.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 Beachmaster Handbook
2. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
3. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
4. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
5. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1803ACV-AMPH-1003: Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne ACV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To execute a safe and orderly evacuation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat.
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures float.
3. Supervise crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Supervise embarked personnel emergency procedures afloat.
5. Direct execution of emergency distress signals.
6. Monitor and report water level triggers.
7. Direct personnel topside.
8. Conduct a side-to-side transfer.
9. Conduct a rough sea transfer.
10. Perform water survival techniques.
11. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: To complete this task, crewmembers must complete both a side-to-side and a rough sea transfer from a waterborne vehicle. These transfers can occur in any type of water training area, and should not be attempted in actual rough sea conditions unless during an actual emergency.

1803ACV-AMPH-1004: Control Unit Maneuver Afloat (L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, commander's intent, and an amphibious platform.

STANDARD: To embark and land surface assault elements and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive the order higher headquarters.
2. Analyze IPB.
3. Coordinate with Naval staff.
4. Attend pre-sail confirmation brief with naval and supported unit leadership.
5. Develop and issue an operation order.
6. Direct the negotiation of waterway obstacles.
7. Perform embarkation procedures.
8. Secure/unsecure vehicle with lashing assembly.
9. Perform debarkation procedures.
10. Execute tactical launch
11. Respond to tactical control measures.
12. Respond to commands from Primary/Secondary Control Ship.
13. Perform Wave Guide Officer responsibilities.
14. Transition to shore.
15. Perform duties of Recovery Team (RT).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803ACV-AMPH-1005: Direct Recovery Operations Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Recovery to the nearest safe haven which is considered a beach or an amphibious ship.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit with a disabled ACV in a body of water, associated crews, and SL-3.

STANDARD: To return the disabled vehicle to the nearest safe haven.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the environment.
2. Assess the situation.
3. Execute troop transfer, as required.
4. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
5. Prepare towing vehicle for towing.
6. Position the recovery vehicle if required.
7. Attach tow lines.
8. Secure designated hatches.
9. Tow disabled vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803ACV-AMPH-1006: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian platoon and amphibious shipping.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Execute planning.
2. Recognize types of amphibious shipping.
3. Direct ship approach techniques.
4. Coordinate with naval personnel.
5. Perform embarkation procedures.
6. Direct vehicle lashing procedures.
7. Direct pre-water operations, preparations, and unlashing procedures.
8. Perform debarkation procedures.
9. Direct launch.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCTP 13-10M Amphibious Embarkation
5. NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
7. U.S Code Title 33 Navigation and Navigable Waters

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
1803ACV-AMPH-1001 1803ACV-AMPH-1002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803ACV-AMPH-1007: Execute Shore-to-Shore Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a water obstacle, personnel and equipment.

STANDARD: To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security posture.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Execute site analysis.
4. As required, determine speed and direction of current.
5. Assess entry/exit points.
6. Determine/execute amphibious drift technique as required.
7. Consolidate and determine follow on movements.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1803ACV-AMPH-1008: Utilize the Personal Flotation Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed to increase user understanding and knowledge of components of the personal flotation device (PFD) and inspection requirements prior to use. Completion of this task is designed to build comfort and confidence of the individual when employing PFD. This task directly correlates to the Marine's ability to negotiate an amphibious environment in the event of an evacuation/egress from an amphibious vehicle at sea.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an waterborne environment, while wearing the combat uniform and PFD.

STANDARD: To maintain buoyancy while moving to the nearest safe haven on the surface of the water. (MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check PFD for serviceability.
2. Don the PFD.
3. Employ water survival skills.
4. Inflate the PFD by tube or CO2 cartridge.
5. Swim to the nearest safe haven.
6. Maintain inflation as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Inflating the PFD with the CO2 cartridge after it has already been fully or partially inflated by tube can rupture the PFD. CO2 cartridges can be used but their use is not required to complete the task. Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1803ACV-AMPH-1009: Utilize Emergency Breathing Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task familiarizes Marines with the inspection, preparation, utilization and maintenance of emergency breathing devices (EBD).

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a sinking vehicle, personal flotation device (PFD) with EBD, and equipment.

STANDARD: To egress the vehicle and gain access to the surface.(MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check EBD for serviceability.
2. Check EBD for pressure.
3. Prepare EBD for use.
4. Employ EBD to assist in egress.
5. Exhale on assent, do not hold breath.
6. Inflate PFD as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1803ACV-C2-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew and an operating area.

STANDARD: To control the movement of vehicle(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ day ground guiding signals.
2. Employ night ground guiding signals.
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals.
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).

1803ACV-C2-1002: Respond to Signs and Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To control Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) movement/action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to standard beach signs and markers.
2. Respond to standard naval signs and markers.

3. Respond to standard tactical signs and markers.
4. Respond to standard logistical signs and markers.
5. Recognize waterway navigational signs and markers (red right returning).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual-Technical
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Non organic equipment to an AA unit, requires Beach Master Unit or Land Force Support Party support.

1803ACV-C2-1003: Operate the ACV C2 System (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated communications equipment.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of communication and navigation systems within the ACV.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the C2 equipment for operations.
2. Check settings of the C2 equipment.
3. Operate the C2 systems.
4. Shut down the C2 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-C2-1004: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AA unit and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: To enforce voice radio procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC.
2. Update frequency hopping data using Electronic Remote Fill (ERF), as required.
3. Enforce standard radio procedures.
4. Adhere to local CEOI.
5. Minimize Electro-Magnetic signature.
6. Enforce radio silence as required.
7. Determine the presence of Electronic Counter Measures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1803ACV-C2-1005: Control the Submission of Reports (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats, scenario, and a situation requiring tactical or administrative information.

STANDARD: To inform higher, adjacent, and supported/supporting units.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational or amphibious).
2. Generate or receive report.
3. Determine appropriate C2 system to forward report.
4. Forward report.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

1803ACV-C2-1006: Deliver an Operation Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission from higher headquarters or a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To issue a tactically sound plan that supports higher headquarters intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Deliver warning order.
2. Conduct the BAMCIS process.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

1803ACV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV weapons system, and all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7 & 12, prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm grenade machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire. Apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from the Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS).

5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload and remove a CROWS mounted M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
7. Boresight the CROWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per ACV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Officer Program of Instruction.

1803ACV-GNRY-1002: Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK19, M2, machine gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

1803ACV-GNRY-1003: Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure system power is off.
2. PMCS CROWS exterior components.
3. PMCS CROWS interior components.
4. Lubricate CROWS components.
5. Power up CROWS.
6. Operate electrical components.
7. Operate manual components.
8. Complete CROWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

1803ACV-GNRY-1004: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine section fire plan sketches firing data.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate platoon level engagement area criteria.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803ACV-GNRY-1005: Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, and ammunition.

STANDARD: To establish a relationship between point of aim and center of beaten zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify a target between 700-1000 meter.
2. Lay reticle on center of target.
3. Engage target.
4. Move point of aim to center of beaten zone.

5. Reengage to confirm center of beaten zone.
6. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as required.
7. Secure weapon system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
3. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	8 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	8 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1803ACV-GNRY-1006: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV mounted weapons, fire commands, multiple targets and a scenario.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct fire commands.
4. Conduct immediate/ remedial actions if required.
5. Conduct barrel change if required.
6. Conduct reload of weapon systems if required.
7. Communicate weapon status.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
7. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
8. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: 1. Hours are captured in each of the Gunnery Tables.
2. As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. The total ammunition will be used to conduct 2 iterations; (1) for familiarization and (2) for evaluation. Individuals will operate both weapon systems.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification day and night.
3. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
4. This task will be performed to standard during the gunnery tables. The Assault Amphibian School (AAS) can modify live fire gunnery tables to satisfy school graduation requirements.

1803ACV-GNRY-1007: Direct Unit Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a task-organized force, tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.

9. Control rates of fire.
10. Conduct Battle Damage Assessment.
11. Send Reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. The total ammunition will be used to conduct 2 iterations; (1) for familiarization and (2) for evaluation. Individuals will operate both weapon systems.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803ACV-SUPT-1001: Brief Supported Unit Commander on ACV Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission and a command relationship with a supported unit.

STANDARD: To assist with planning by providing estimates of supportability and subject matter expertise.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist the supported unit leader with mission analysis and planning.
2. Task-organize the AA unit.
3. Brief the vehicle AA unit's capabilities and limitations.
4. Brief the AA unit's offensive and defensive considerations.
5. Brief the AA unit's amphibious employment considerations.
6. Determine and address the logistical requirements.
7. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

1803ACV-SUPT-1002: Support Unit Specified Tasks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The Assault Amphibian (AA) platoon is able to provide a myriad of support missions to their supported units, which include route reconnaissance, screening, casualty evacuation, command and control, fire support team, support by fire, mortars transport, as well as resupply operations. The Platoon Commander should be able to determine supportability based upon the associated specified task.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, an operation order form higher, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Brief ACV capabilities.
2. Participate in the planning process.
3. Identify unit assigned task(s).
4. Determine requirement(s).
5. Task-organize.
6. Advise supported unit commander on employment techniques.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

1803ACV-TAC-1001: Analyze the Intelligence Preparation of the Battlespace (IPB)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an intelligence brief, tactical scenario and references.

STANDARD: To exploit enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities and probable courses of action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze the battlespace environment.

2. Analyze the battlespace's effect on operations.
3. Analyze the threat.
4. Analyze threat Course of Action (COA).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Requires higher or supported headquarters support from S-2/G-2/J-2.

1803ACV-TAC-1002: Execute Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: ACV units are capable of executing operations in special terrain. Mobility limitations must be considered when employing the unit in riverine, jungle, desert, mountainous, urbanized terrains, cold weather climates and during command and control in a denied or degraded environment (C2D2E).

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To adapt vehicle capabilities within environmental limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive the IPB.
2. Identify mobility limitations.
3. Consider employment techniques.
4. Consider maintenance requirements.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-TAC-1003: Execute Mounted Navigation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, operation order, map, and a navigation device.

STANDARD: To arrive at a designated point(s) within the specified timeframe.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct map study.
2. Create route
3. Prepare navigation devices (map, DAGR as required).
4. Brief route.
5. Move to a designated point.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-TAC-1004: Employ Tactical Driving Techniques (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to provide the ACV platoon commander employment considerations of their unit, and individual actions to take, within the execution of larger movement techniques inclusive of: formations, movement techniques, immediate actions and defensive vehicle postures.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit executing operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the unit in response to a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Utilize terrain to avoid exposure to the threat.
2. Utilize dispersion with respect to METT-T.
3. Direct formations.
4. Maintain speed that supports the scheme of maneuver.
5. Respond to threats.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	2	N

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The following formations must be demonstrated: column, vee, wedge, echelon left/right, unit on-line, and herringbone. The following movement techniques must be demonstrated: bounding over watch, successive bounding, and travelling over watch.

1803ACV-TAC-1005: Lead ACV unit in Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Planning for and execution of offensive operations consist of: movement to contact, attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order from higher and tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To execute the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze IPB
2. Lead the planning process.
3. Task-organize the unit to best support concept of operations.
4. Select type of attack and form of maneuver based on METT-T.
5. Select movement technique based METT-T analysis.
6. Command ACVs during movements in support of the scheme of maneuver.
7. Direct ACV unit fires.
8. Prepare for follow-on missions.
9. Control signature management.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. There will be 2 iterations; (1) for familiarization and (2) for evaluation. Individuals will operate both weapon systems.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-TAC-1006: Lead an ACV Unit in Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order from higher and tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To execute the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Execute planning.
2. Recommend defensive type.
3. Recommend task organization.
4. Direct fire planning.
5. Integrate obstacle plan.
6. Execute offense planning considerations.
7. Conduct leaders recon.
8. Issue order.
9. Occupy defense area.
10. Execute priorities of work and rehearsals.
11. Develop security plan.
12. Develop unit sustainment plan.
13. Achieve decisive contact.

14. Direct ACV unit fires.
15. Submit reports.
16. Direct consolidation and reorganization.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. There will be 2 iterations; (1) for familiarization and (2) for evaluation. Individuals will operate both weapon systems.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-TAC-1007: Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and fire support assets.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver with effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify fire support assets.
2. Identify desired effects.
3. Identify fire support coordinating measures.
4. Plan targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions/avenues of approach/avenues of withdrawal.
5. Identify priority targets.
6. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
7. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
8. Integrate updated fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
9. Disseminate fire support plan.
10. Continually refine the fire support plan based on METT-T.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

1803ACV-TRNG-1001: Manage Unit's Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

BILLETS: Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an training and readiness manual, Mission Essential Task List (METL), simulated unit, scenario and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure training and evaluation complies with individual and collective standards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop short and mid-range plans as appropriate.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule training cycles.
7. Execute backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3 Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1803ACV-TRNG-1002: Lead an After Action Review (AAR)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: All training exercises have an AAR. It can be executed from within the unit or by a third party that was involved with the training or the evaluation of the training. The AAR s formality and scope increase with the command level and the size of the training evolution. An AAR identifies both the surfaces and gaps of an exercise planning, tactics, combined-arms employment, command and control, communications, survivability, and personnel and logistics support. It highlights lessons learned and identifies alternative solutions. To be more timely and effective, an AAR is executed several times (at logical breakpoints) during the exercise and at the conclusion of the exercise. This allows units to clearly identify and correct deficiencies as they occur, vice at the end of the training evolution.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and a completed training event or operation.

STANDARD: To identify both the surfaces and gaps of an exercises planning and highlight lessons learned.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Designate area for after action.
2. Account for all unit and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observations of personnel during event.
4. Engage all personnel for inputs.
5. Compile information obtained and submit to higher (Topic/ Discussion/ Recommendation).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1803ACV-VOPS-1001: Execute Emergency Procedures on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated equipment and crew.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of the crew and embarked personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew roll over drills.
3. Evacuate an injured crewmember.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1803ACV-VOPS-1002: Apply Risk Management

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit with crews, SL-3 equipment and simulated attached personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crews, embarked personnel, and dismounted personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify and document hazards.
2. Identify, develop, and document the assessment of hazards.
3. Make and document risk decisions.
4. Document and implement controls.
5. Supervise risk management.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-VOPS-1003: Direct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) with associated SL-3, materials, and reference.

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct PMCS on the vehicle exterior.
2. Direct PMCS on the vehicle engine compartment.
3. Direct PMCS on the vehicle crew stations.
4. Direct PMCS on the vehicle troop compartment.
5. Direct PMCS of the weapon systems.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1803ACV-VOPS-1004: Direct ACV unit SL-3 Equipment Maintenance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) with associated equipment and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability and serviceability of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment to determine accountability and serviceability.
2. Direct the inventory of SL-3.
3. Annotate SL-3 discrepancies as required.
4. Reconcile SL-3 discrepancies as required.
5. Direct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) of SL-3 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: SL-3-13133A Components List For Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1803ACV-VOPS-1005: Direct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit with associated SL-3 and reference.

STANDARD: To identify unit's vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct pre-operation checks.
2. Direct at-halt operation checks.
3. Direct after operation checks.
4. Direct pre-water operation checks.
5. Direct during water operation checks.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1803ACV-VOPS-1006: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, simulated scenario, and the reference(s).

STANDARD: To assess the situation and determine course(s) of action(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize a malfunction symptom.
2. Follow the Troubleshooting Symptom Index.
3. Determine course of action and impact on mission.
4. Report discrepancies to maintenance personnel.
5. Assist maintenance personnel in the performance of corrective maintenance and services.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

---

1803ACV-VOPS-1007: Direct ACV Unit Tow

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a scenario, disabled ACV requiring recovery, and an operational ACV with associated crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To assess the situation and determine course(s) of action(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables and tow bar.
4. Tow disabled ACV.
5. Disconnect towed vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-VOPS-1008: Execute Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an ACV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of vehicle and its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove salvageable items.
2. Determine methods of destruction available
3. Determine the items to be destroyed.
4. Destroy identified equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
G900 Grenade, Hand Incendiary Thermite AN-M14	4 grenades per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803ACV-VOPS-1009: Monitor the Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Maintenance Production Report (MPR) and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To gain an accurate assessment of the unit's readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify elements of reports.
2. Verify discrepancies.
3. Verify job status.
4. Verify parts status.
5. Verify job completion.
6. Reconcile SL-3.
7. Report readiness.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

1803ACV-AMPH-2001: Conduct Surf Survival

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation followed by a swim to shore through the surf zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform check of personal flotation device (PFD).
2. Assist with the evacuation of embarked personnel into the ocean.
3. Exit the vehicle.
4. Enter the water with a buddy.
5. Employ PFD.
6. Perform water survival techniques.
7. Perform group survival techniques.
8. Assist swimmers, as required.
9. Swim toward shore with assigned buddy.
10. Swim through the surf zone.
11. Consolidate on the beach.
12. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Group survival techniques consist of the line and the ring techniques.

1803ACV-C2-2001: Take part in the Marine Corps Planning Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit, situation, and desired outcome.

STANDARD: To provide subject matter expertise on ACV employment to a Battalion or higher staff.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Know the six steps of the Marine Corps Planning Process.
2. Know the capabilities of the ACV.
3. Know the logistical requirements of the ACV.
4. Assist in Problem Framing.
5. Assist in Course of Action Development.
6. Assist in Wargaming.
7. Assist in COA Comparison and Decision.
8. Assist in Orders Development.
9. Assist in the transition.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1803ACV-COND-2001: March with a Fighting Load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

STANDARD: To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a MOS Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. Prior to executing this event, Marines will execute a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

1803ACV-SUPT-2001: Perform Duties of a Special Staff Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit task-organized to a supported organization.

STANDARD: To provide subject matter expertise on ACV employment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recommend task-organization of AA unit.
2. Direct organic maintenance support.
3. Direct organic logistics support.
4. Advise the supported commander on ACV employment.
5. Coordinate with staff sections.
6. Coordinate with Naval entities.
7. Assist in planning.
8. Evaluate operations and provide recommendations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

1803ACV-TAC-2001: Direct Quartering Party Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation order, personnel, and equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare an assembly area for follow-on forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear area.
5. Direct improvements and security posture.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803ACV-TRNG-2001: Manage the Unit's Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Operations Officer

GRADES: MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and/or commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To support training plan development.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop long, mid, and short range training plans.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule training cycles.
7. Execute backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is taught during formal training at applicable Command and Staff College's and Marine Corps Tactics and Operations Group courses.

1803ACV-TRNG-2002: Develop a Unit Exercise

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Operations Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a training and readiness manual, Mission Essential Task List (METL), simulated unit and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure training and evaluation complies with individual and collective standards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify collective and individual training events from T&R manuals.
2. Identify live, virtual, and constructive training venues.
3. Identify resource requirements.
4. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
5. Develop opposing force plan.
6. Develop training assessment plan.
7. Develop after action review.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCO 1553.3_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

MOS 1833 AMPHIBIOUS COMBAT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	9000	9-2
EVENT CODING	9001	9-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	9002	9-2
PREREQUISITES	9003	9-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	9004	9-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	9005	9-10
1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS	9006	9-13

CHAPTER 9

MOS 1833 AMPHIBIOUS COMBAT VEHICLE INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

9000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an ACV Crewmember. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either managed on-the-job training (MOJT) or through resident career progression training (Vehicle Commanders Course, Assault Amphibian Unit Leader Course), distance learning, or Professional Military Education (PME).

9001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1833ACV" indicating that the event is for ACV Crewmembers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for ACV Crewmembers are:

AMPH - Amphibious Operations	GNRY - Gunnery
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	SUPT - Support
COND - Conditioning	C2 - Command and Control
TAC - Tactical Operation	TRNG - Training

c. Field three - 1000/2000 are for the Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV) platform, this field provides numerical sequencing.

9002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

9003. PREREQUISITES. The 1833 ACV Crewmember will have completed the ACV Crewmember Course before reporting in at an Assault Amphibian (AA) Battalion.

9004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The ACV Crewmember will complete the Assault Amphibian Crewmember (AAC) Course, Assault Amphibian School (AAS),

Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the Crewmember will conduct additional 2000-level training in assigned AA unit in a variety of billets. 2000-level training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

2. Billet: ACV Driver. Junior 1833 on the ACV. The ACV Driver employs the vehicle under the direction of the Vehicle Commander (VC). The ACV Driver is responsible for reporting enemy threats to the VC utilizing proper reporting procedures and responding accordingly.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Drives the ACV on land while being proficient in adjusting the vehicle settings and positioning in accordance with the terrain.

(2) Drives the ACV in water while being proficient in land-to-water and water-to-land procedures.

(3) Identifies vehicle malfunctions and communicates malfunctions to Vehicle Commander.

(4) Proficient in assisting the Gunner with installation, removal, and weapons maintenance.

(5) Detect and identify threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(6) Assists the crew in conducting all operations checks.

(7) Assists with evacuation when possible.

(8) Conducts tactical movement as part of an AA Unit.

(9) Assists with Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS).

(10) Operate the ACV communications suite.

(11) Conduct and assist with vehicle recovery.

3. Billet: ACV Gunner. The Gunner is second in command on the ACV. They need to be proficient with the operation of the Common Remote Operated Weapons System (CROWS). Responsible for receiving fire commands and assists in acquiring targets.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Qualified in acquiring targets and CROWS employment.

(2) Executes commands from the vehicle commander to employment and functions of the CROWS.

(3) Operates vehicle communication systems.

(4) Assumes the duties of the VC in his absence.

(5) Assists with evacuation when possible.

(6) Identifies and communicates friendly assets or enemy threats to the Vehicle Commander.

(7) Assists in conducting vehicle recovery.

(8) Conducts CROWS operations checks and preventative maintenance.

(9) Assists in operations checks and preventative maintenance.

4. BILLET: ACV Vehicle Commander. Senior 1833 Crewmember on the Amphibious Combat Vehicle (ACV). The ACV Commander leads the crew and is responsible for the maintenance, operation, and ACV employment and associated combat essential equipment (CEE).

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the ACV crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned ACV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for submitting combat, admin, and logistical reports to the AA Section leader or higher if required.

(5) Maintains ACV administrative documents.

(6) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and functioning of the ACV.

(7) Directs weapon's system employment.

(8) Identifies threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Issues fire commands.

(10) Directs crew in ACV recovery operations.

(11) Trains the Rear Egress Operator (REO) in embarked personnel egress trigger line and procedures.

(12) Trains assigned embark personnel to assist on the CROWS.

*NOTE: When the ACV is employed by a more senior billet, (e.g., Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant) that member assumes the role of ACV Commander while assigned to that vehicle with command, tactical control, and weapons employment; administrative responsibility shall still reside to the vehicles assigned ACV Commander.

5. Billet: ACV Assistant Section Leader. The ACV Assistant Section Leader assists in the tactical employment of the ACV section and is responsible for the maintenance, operation, and AV employment and associated collateral gear.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the ACV crew.

(2) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AV.

(3) Responsible for embarked personnel.

(4) Responsible for submitting combat, admin, and logistical reports to the AA Section Leader or higher if required.

(5) Maintains ACV administrative documents.

(6) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and functioning of the AV.

(7) Assist the section leader to direct CROWS.

(8) Identifies threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Proficient at fire commands.

(10) Proficient at ACV recovery operations.

6. BILLET: ACV Section Leader. Senior 1833 in the Assault Amphibian (AA) Section with three or more vehicles. The AA Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated CEE collateral equipment in the section. During operations, either in the water or on land, the AA Section Leader maintains control of the tactical movement and maneuver of the AA section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines in the AA section.

(2) Responsible for embarked personnel within the AA section.

(3) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AA section.

(4) Responsible for the sections Vehicle readiness.

(5) Audits AA section's administrative documents.

(6) Executes unit Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AA section.

(7) Employs AA section's Weapons Systems.

(8) Identifies and prioritizes threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(9) Receives and submits reports.

(10) Advises supported unit commander on ACV employment considerations.

(11) Responsible for recovery operations.

7. BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, Assault Amphibian Platoon. Senior 1833 and second in command of the Assault Amphibian (AA) Platoon. The AA Platoon Sergeant is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles, the platoon's logistics, and associated gear. Advises the AA Platoon Commander on training, welfare, administrative functions, and tactical employment of the AA platoon.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Responsible for the training, morale, professional development, welfare, and discipline of all Marines within the AA platoon.

(2) Responsible for maintaining amphibious vehicles and CEE within platoon.

(3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the AA platoon.

(4) Employs ACV Weapon System.

(5) Identifies and prioritizes threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

(6) Responsible for the tactical employment and maneuver of assigned AA platoon.

(7) Proficient in combat reporting procedures.

(8) Advises supported unit commander.

(9) Assumes command in AA Platoon Commanders absence.

(10) Coordinates embarkation of ACVs and AA platoon.

(11) Coordinates logistical support for AA platoon.

(12) Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

(13) Responsible for ACV recovery operations.

8. BILLET: Vehicle Crew Evaluator. The Vehicle Crew Evaluator (VCE) serves as an instructor during training and as an evaluator during qualifications. VCE's must be used by the training unit to evaluate all aspects of gunnery. VCE's are used extensively in establishing and operating gunnery training and in evaluating crew proficiency in both individual skills and crew duties.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Understand all techniques and procedures related to gunnery training exercises.

(2) Trains and evaluates crews on the use of gunnery devices.

(3) Serves as an instructor during AV gunnery training events during the conduct of the initial gunnery sustainment training.

(4) Performs the duties of an evaluator during qualification events for intermediate and advanced gunnery training.

(5) Records training and qualification information on score sheets and crew records.

9. BILLET: Company Master Gunner. The Company Master Gunner has completed the Master Gunner Common Core course and is responsible to the Company Commander for the training and employment of organic weapons systems.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the Company Commander in all matters pertaining to Assault Amphibian (AA) gunnery and employment of all weapons systems within the company.

(2) Evaluates and grades the company Amphibious Vehicle (AV) crews during their semi-annual pre-qualification tables.

(3) Allocates ammunition based on the company's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan. Reallocates ammunition as needed to support all training requirements.

(4) Serves as company liaison to the battalion on all matters pertaining to range/ Multi-Purpose Range Complex (MPRC) as well as all other ranges and training locations aboard station.

(5) Mentors, advises, and assists the company in AA gunnery sustainment, preparation, and the Gunnery Skills Test (GST).

(6) Serves as the Company Senior Instructor Operator for all gunnery training aids, devices, simulations and simulators (TADSS). The AV Turret Trainer (AV-TT) to ensure that all AV crews qualify through the training program.

10. BILLET: Company Logistics Chief. Second most senior 1833 Crewmember in the AA Company who is responsible for all logistical requirements. He assists the Company Operations Chief and the Executive Officer in the logistical planning of the AA company.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Company Commander on unit logistical requirements.

(2) Coordinates AA company logistical support.

(3) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

(4) Coordinates AA company embarkation plans.

(5) Monitors the Maintenance Process.

(6) Monitors AA company hazardous material section.

(7) Assists the Executive Officer and Company Operations Chief in planning future operations.

(8) Instructs AA company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

(9) Trains AA Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.

(10) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the AA company.

(11) Conducts quartering party operations.

(12) Organize, train, and supervise the AA battalion combat trains during operations.

(13). Assist in camp commandant responsibilities for an AA Bn (H&S).

11. BILLET: Company Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the Assault Amphibian (AA) Company. Advises the AA Company Commander on training and operations of the AA company.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Company Commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.

(2) Coordinates and evaluates AA company individual and unit training.

(3) Coordinates Operations Center setup and operations.

(4) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in the Operation Center.

(5) Coordinates assembly area activities.

(6) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.

(7) Assists the AA Executive Officer in planning future operations.

(8) Advises the AA Company Commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

(9) Instructs AA company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

(10) Trains AA Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.

(11) Mentors the Staff Non-Commissioned Officers of the AA company.

(12) Assist in camp commandant responsibilities for an AA Bn (H&S).

12. BILLET: Battalion Master Gunner. The Battalion Master Gunner is the senior Master Gunner billet in the Assault Amphibian (AA) Battalion. Responsible to the AA Battalion Commander for the training and

employment of all organic weapons systems. The Battalion Master Gunner oversees and mentors the Company Master Gunners in the performance of their duties.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Battalion Commander and Bn staff on all matters pertaining to employment of all weapons systems within the AA battalion.

(2) Evaluates and grades the AA battalion's crews during qualification.

(3) Allocates ammunition based on the AA battalion's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan. Reallocates ammunition as needed to support all training requirements.

(4) Serves as liaison to range operations on all matters pertaining to range/MPRC, as well as all other ranges/training locations aboard station.

(5) Develops, advises, and assists the Company Master Gunners.

(6) Serves as the Battalion Master Instructor Operator for all gunnery training aids, devices, simulations and simulators (TADSS). The AV Turret Trainer (AV-TT) to ensure that all AV crews qualify through the training program.

13. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the Assault Amphibian battalion logistics section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Logistics Officer on unit logistical requirements.

(2) Organize, train, and supervise the AA battalion combat trains during operations.

(3) Coordinates AA battalion logistical support.

(4) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

(5) Determines logistical requirements for unit training.

(6) Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.

(7) Monitors battalion hazardous material section.

(8) Serves as senior enlisted in the combat trains who supervises synchronization of functions of logistics at all echelons of support.

(9) Develops, coordinates, and supervises the execution of all the internal and external logistical support for the AA battalion as directed by the AA Battalion Commander.

(10) Oversee the professional development of all enlisted Marines within the S-4 through professional military education, experiences, and personal example.

(11) Supervise the maintenance and priorities of work as it pertains to facilities, to include improvements.

(12) Coordinate with Base Installation and Logistics (I&L) for standard upkeep and repairs to AA battalion facilities.

(13) Coordinates Logistics Operations Center (LOC) setup and activities in conjunction with the Operations Center.

(14) Serves as the senior enlisted Marine in LOC support area.

14. BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Crewmember in the Assault Amphibian (AA) battalion operations section.

a. Core Capabilities:

(1) Advises the AA Operations Officer on unit training.

(2) Coordinates AA battalion individual and unit training.

(3) Provides input to amphibious landing plans.

(4) Assists in verifying Defense Readiness Reporting System-Marine Corps (DRRS-MC) data and timely submission.

(5) Provides input into the different echelons of deployment requirements.

(6) Coordinates Combat Operations Center (COC) setup and ensures efficient operation.

(7) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in the Operations Center.

(8) Evaluates individual and unit training.

(9) Coordinates AA Operations Section embarkation plans.

(10) Assists the AA Operations Officer in planning future operations.

(11) Manages, provides career counseling, and assigns all 1833 Marines in the AA battalion.

(12) Manages all required MOS schools and additional duty schools for the AA battalion.

(13) Advises the AA Battalion Commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

(14) Certified as an Operations and Tactics Instructor (OTI) prior to assuming the billet. See MCO 3502.7 and Command and Control T&R Manual (2000-Level Individual Tasks) for specific functions/responsibilities.

9005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
1000 Level Events		
1833ACV-AMPH-1001	Egress the ACV (S)	9-13
1833ACV-AMPH-1002	Prepare an ACV for Water Operations	9-14
1833ACV-AMPH-1003	Evacuate Embarked Personnel from ACV	9-15
1833ACV-AMPH-1004	Maneuver ACV Afloat	9-15
1833ACV-AMPH-1005	Tow an ACV Afloat	9-16
1833ACV-AMPH-1006	Prepare disabled ACV for towing afloat	9-17
1833ACV-AMPH-1007	Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping	9-18
1833ACV-AMPH-1008	Utilize the Personal Flotation Device	9-19
1833ACV-AMPH-1009	Utilize Emergency Breathing Device	9-20
1833ACV-C2-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	9-20
1833ACV-C2-1002	Operate the ACV C2 System (S/L)	9-21
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	Conduct Gun Table I	9-22
1833ACV-GNRY-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	9-23
1833ACV-GNRY-1003	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS) (S/L)	9-24
1833ACV-GNRY-1004	Utilize a Range Card (S/L)	9-25
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	Engage Targets (S/L)	9-26
1833ACV-TAC-1001	Apply Tactical Employment Techniques (S/L)	9-28
1833ACV-TAC-1002	Execute Immediate Action Drills (S/L)	9-29
1833ACV-VOPS-1001	Apply Risk Management	9-30
1833ACV-VOPS-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	9-31
1833ACV-VOPS-1003	Conduct Operational Checks	9-31
1833ACV-VOPS-1004	Identify a System Malfunction	9-32
1833ACV-VOPS-1005	Embark Personnel onto an ACV	9-33
1833ACV-VOPS-1006	Drive on Land (S/L)	9-33
1833ACV-VOPS-1007	Tow ACV on Land	9-34
1833ACV-VOPS-1008	Conduct Demolition	9-35
2000 Level Events		
1833ACV-AMPH-2001	Prepare for Waterborne Operations	9-36
1833ACV-AMPH-2002	Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel	9-37
1833ACV-AMPH-2003	Control Unit Maneuver Afloat	9-38
1833ACV-AMPH-2004	Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations	9-39
1833ACV-AMPH-2005	Conduct Surf Survival	9-40
1833ACV-AMPH-2006	Respond to a Waterborne Emergency	9-41
1833ACV-C2-2001	Respond to Signs/Markers	9-42
1833ACV-C2-2002	Employ C2 equipment	9-42
1833ACV-C2-2003	Submit Reports (S/L)	9-43
1833ACV-C2-2004	Develop an Operation Order	9-44
1833ACV-C2-2005	Issue a Fragmentary Order	9-45
1833ACV-COND-2001	March with a Fighting Load	9-46
1833ACV-GNRY-2001	Develop a Range Card (S/L)	9-46
1833ACV-GNRY-2002	Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station	9-47
1833ACV-GNRY-2003	Engage targets (S/L)	9-48
1833ACV-GNRY-2004	Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)	9-50
1833ACV-GNRY-2005	Create a Fire Plan Sketch	9-51
1833ACV-GNRY-2006	Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)	9-52

1833ACV-GNRY-2007	Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)	9-53
1833ACV-SUPT-2001	Brief Infantry on Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment	9-55
1833ACV-SUPT-2002	Support Unit Specified Tasks	9-55
1833ACV-SUPT-2003	Direct Recovery Operations	9-56
1833ACV-TAC-2001	Conduct Mounted Navigation	9-57
1833ACV-TAC-2002	Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)	9-58
1833ACV-TAC-2003	Supervise Quartering Party Duties	9-59
1833ACV-TAC-2004	Lead an ACV Unit in Offensive Operations (S/L)	9-60
1833ACV-TAC-2005	Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning	9-61
1833ACV-TAC-2006	Lead an ACV Unit in Defensive Operations (S/L)	9-62
1833ACV-TRNG-2001	Evaluate ACV Gunnery	9-63
1833ACV-TRNG-2002	Develop Surface Danger Zones	9-64
1833ACV-TRNG-2003	Design Ranges in Support of Operations	9-64
1833ACV-TRNG-2004	Facilitate Employment of Vehicle Mounted Weapons Systems	9-65
1833ACV-TRNG-2005	Facilitate Simulation Training Program	9-66
1833ACV-TRNG-2006	Manage Gunnery Training Program	9-66
1833ACV-TRNG-2007	Manage Unit Training Program	9-67
1833ACV-TRNG-2008	Develop Unit Exercise	9-68
1833ACV-TRNG-2009	Lead an After Action Review (AAR)	9-68
1833ACV-VOPS-2001	Conduct a Risk Assessment	9-69
1833ACV-VOPS-2002	Initiate Administrative Maintenance Process	9-69
1833ACV-VOPS-2003	Monitor the Maintenance Process	9-70
1833ACV-VOPS-2004	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	9-71
1833ACV-VOPS-2005	Supervise Operational Checks	9-71

9006. 1000/2000 LEVEL EVENTS

1833ACV-AMPH-1001: Egress the ACV (S)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged ACV.

STANDARD: To reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish orientation.
2. Employ emergency breathing device.
3. Unfasten five point harness.
4. Open crew hatches.
5. Fold screen (if required).
6. Fold seat or headrest (if required).

7. Exit the vehicle.
8. Inflate personal flotation device (PFD).
9. Gain access to the surface.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	SVET	Marine Hours	8	Y

NOTES: Egress drills can be conducted on the ACV while parked at the ramp or during exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

EQUIPMENT: Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1833ACV-AMPH-1002: Prepare an ACV for Water Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Amphibious Combat Vehicle, checklists, order, and equipment.

STANDARD: To ensure vehicle readiness to perform waterborne operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct operations checklists.
2. Perform Rear Egress Operator responsibilities.
3. Secure all equipment in the ACV.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-1003: Evacuate Embarked Personnel from ACV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne ACV with passengers, while acting as a member of a crew.

STANDARD: To prevent injury or loss of life.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remain in place.
2. Ensure Master power remains ON.
3. Place bilge pumps on override.
4. Assist VC in duties.
5. Execute emergency distress signals.
6. Monitor and report water level triggers.
7. Direct personnel topside.
8. Conduct a side-to-side transfer.
9. Conduct a rough sea transfer.
10. Perform water survival techniques.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: To complete this task, crewmembers must complete both a side-to-side and a rough sea transfer from a waterborne vehicle. These transfers can occur in any type of water training area, and should not be attempted in actual rough sea conditions unless during an actual emergency.

1833ACV-AMPH-1004: Maneuver ACV Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV and crew.

STANDARD: To safely enter/exit to/from shore without damage to equipment or harm personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure water tight integrity.
2. Utilize driver vision enhancer systems.
3. Follow land to water procedures.
4. Place ACV in ford mode if required.
5. React to waterway navigation signs and markers.
6. Employ water driving techniques.
7. Follow water to land procedures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-1005: Tow an ACV Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Recovery to the nearest safe haven, which is considered a beach or an amphibious ship.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV and a disabled ACV in a body of water, associated crews, signals, and SL-3.

STANDARD: To return the disabled ACV to the nearest safe haven/boat haven.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the environment/situation.
2. Recognize Day/Night ACV distress Signals
3. Maneuver towing ACV into position.
4. Assist in conducting troop transfer if able and as necessary.
5. Secure hatches as required.
6. Tow disabled vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-1006: Prepare disabled ACV for towing afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Recovery to the nearest safe haven, which is considered a beach or an amphibious ship.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled ACV in a body of water, associated crews, signals, and SL-3.

STANDARD: To prepare the disabled ACV to be towed to the nearest safe haven/boat haven.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess the environment/situation.
2. Inform VC of situation
3. Place bilge pumps on override, as required.
4. Secure hatches as required.
5. Watch water levels on disabled vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-1007: Embark and Debark Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew and amphibious shipping.

STANDARD: To recover and launch from a well deck without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize types of amphibious shipping (LPDs, LSDs, LHAs, and LHDs).
2. Perform ship approach techniques.
3. Recognize green/red well.
4. Perform embarkation procedures.
5. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.
6. Unsecure vehicle with lashing assembly.
7. Perform debarkation procedures.
8. Conduct launch.
9. Maneuver within approach lane.
10. Respond to tactical control measures.
11. Transition to shore.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
5. U.S Code Title 33 Navigation and Navigable Waters

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task. AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-1008: Utilize the Personal Flotation Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed to increase user understanding and knowledge of components of the personal flotation device (PFD) and inspection requirements prior to use. Completion of this task is designed to build comfort and confidence of the individual when employing PFD. This task directly correlates to the Marines ability to negotiate an amphibious environment in the event of an evacuation/egress from an amphibious vehicle at sea.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an waterborne environment, while wearing the combat uniform and PFD.

STANDARD: To maintain buoyancy while moving to the nearest safe haven on the surface of the water. (MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check PFD for serviceability.
2. Don the PFD.
3. Employ water survival skills.
4. Inflate the PFD by tube or CO2 cartridge.
5. Swim to the nearest safe haven.
6. Maintain inflation as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Inflating the PFD with the CO2 cartridge after it has already been fully or partially inflated by tube can rupture the PFD. CO2 cartridges can be used but their use is not required to complete the task. Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1833ACV-AMPH-1009: Utilize Emergency Breathing Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task familiarizes Marines with the inspection, preparation, utilization and maintenance of emergency breathing devices (EBD).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a sinking vehicle, personal flotation device (PFD) with EBD, and equipment.

STANDARD: To egress the vehicle and gain access to the surface.(MCTP 3-10C pg. L-7)

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Check EBD for serviceability.
2. Check EBD for pressure.
3. Prepare EBD for use.
4. Employ EBD to assist in egress.
5. Exhale on assent, do not hold breath.
6. Inflate PFD as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training requirement can be fulfilled while completing the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET).

1833ACV-C2-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew, signal flags, signal lights, and an operating area.

STANDARD: To control movement of the vehicle(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Employ day ground guiding signals.

2. Employ night ground guiding signals.
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals.
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).

1833ACV-C2-1002: Operate the ACV C2 System (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated navigation command and communication equipment systems.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of communication and navigation systems with the AV crew and other elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the C2 equipment for operations.
2. Check settings of the C2 equipment.
3. Shut down the C2 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: 1. Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.
2. As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV weapons system, and all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7 & 12, prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm grenade machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from CROWS.
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload and remove M2 HB .50 cal machine gun from CROWS.
7. Boresight the CROWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per ACV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	32 rounds per ACV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course Programs of Instruction.

1833ACV-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given MK19 and M2 machine guns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

1833ACV-GNRY-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS) (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure system power is off.
2. PMCS CROWS exterior components.
3. PMCS CROWS interior components.
4. Lubricate CROWS components.
5. Power up CROWS.
6. Operate electrical components.
7. Operate manual components.
8. Complete CROWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-GNRY-1004: Utilize a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, a completed range card, and a CROWS.

STANDARD: To utilize range card to engage targets with Common Remote Weapons System.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the range card.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference point.
4. Identify vehicle location.
5. Identify sectors of fire.
6. Identify principal direction of fire (PDF) and final protective line (FPL).
7. Identify dead space.
8. Identify listening/observation point position(s).
9. Identify obstacles.
10. Apply the Detect, Identify, Decide, Engage, Assess (DIDEA) process.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-GNRY-1005: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that validates operations of the CROWS from a stationary position against a stationary target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with weapons, ammunition, and a fire command, while utilizing the DIDEA process.

STANDARD: To achieve desired weapons and CROWS operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to fire command.
2. Fire CROWS with M2
3. Fire CROWS With 40mm.
4. Conduct IA drills with CROWS if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
4. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

7. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
AA55 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Dummy MK242 Mod 0	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one confirmation engagement during day light conditions and a night shoot.
3. Gunners will utilize a range card to engage targets.

1833ACV-TAC-1001: Apply Tactical Employment Techniques (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to provide the ACV Driver with employment considerations of their vehicle, and individual actions to take, within the conduct of larger offensive or defensive movements inclusive of: formations, movement techniques, immediate actions and defensive postures.

BILLETS: Driver

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew and equipment, while operating as part of a unit conducting operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the ACV in response to a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct formation driving.
2. Utilize terrain to avoid exposure to the threat.
3. Utilize dispersion with respect to METT-T.
4. Maintain speed that supports the scheme of maneuver.
5. Respond to VC Commands.
6. Apply basics of the defense.
7. Respond to threats.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

Partial	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	N

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The following formations must be demonstrated: column, vee, wedge, echelon left/right, unit on-line, and herringbone. The following movement techniques must be demonstrated: bounding over watch, successive bounding, travelling over watch, and defensive positions and procedures.

1833ACV-TAC-1002: Execute Immediate Action Drills (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Immediate action drills include, but are not limited to, the following: Actions upon enemy contact, receiving direct/indirect fire, and mines and obstacles.

BILLETS: Driver

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As an ACV Driver conducting operations on land.

STANDARD: To position the vehicle in response to enemy contact and terrain without hesitation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Apply direct fire immediate action drills.
2. Apply indirect fire immediate action drills.
3. Apply immediate action drills on mines and defensive tactical obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

Yes	S/L	DVTE	Marine Hours	1	N
Partial	S/L	TDK	Marine Hours	1	N

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-VOPS-1001: Apply Risk Management

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew, SL-3 equipment, and embarked personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crew and embarked personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew roll over drills.
3. Evacuate an injured crewmember.
4. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicle.
5. Ensure serviceability of recovery equipment during operations.
6. Ensure serviceability of waterborne equipment during operations.
7. Secure equipment/cargo items on vehicle.
8. Enforce all safety regulations with embarked personnel.
9. Comply with all safety regulations for C2 equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-VOPS-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with SL-3 equipment, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform PMCS on the vehicle exterior.
2. Perform PMCS on the vehicle engine compartment where applicable.
3. Perform PMCS on the vehicle crew stations.
4. Perform PMCS on the vehicle troop compartment.
5. Perform PMCS on the vehicle while engine is running.
6. Perform PMCS on C2 Systems.
7. Perform PMCS on SL-3.
8. Report any discrepancies to the vehicle commander.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-VOPS-1003: Conduct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with SL-3 equipment, operational check lists, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the vehicle is operationally ready.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Preform pre-operation checks.
2. Perform at-halt operation checks.
3. Perform after operation checks.
4. Perform pre-water operation checks.
5. Perform during water operation checks.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-VOPS-1004: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV and reference(s).

STANDARD: To report discrepancies to vehicle commander and/or maintenance personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognize a malfunction symptom on Display Panels
2. Recognize a malfunction symptom.
3. Follow the Troubleshooting Symptom Index.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-VOPS-1005: Embark Personnel onto an ACV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV conducting operations and a personnel manifest.

STANDARD: To gain accountability while following safety measures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist the ACV Commander with administering the safety brief.
2. Direct embarked personnel to stow all gear and equipment.
3. Direct embarked personnel to comply with safety requirements/procedures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-VOPS-1006: Drive on Land (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: ACV should drive on all applicable terrain to include but not limited to, side-slope at 30%, incline stop and start at 60%, decline stop and start at 60%, trench crossing at 7 FT, wall at 3 ft., sand, march, trail/ unimproved road, cobble stone, off trail, and fording 2-5 Ft deep.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew.

STANDARD: To negotiate various types of terrain and obstacles with no damage to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Slave start if required.
2. Start ACV.
3. Utilize driver vision enhancer systems.
4. Utilize Central Tire Inflation System (CTIS).
5. Utilize driver panel right switches as required.
6. Utilize driver panel left switches as required.
7. Determine direction of movement.
8. Determine location of terrain, personnel, and other vehicles around ACV.
9. Determine tire mode for terrain.
10. Negotiate terrain.
11. Negotiate obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 8400.6 Licensing Procedures for Ordnance Vehicles
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

1833ACV-VOPS-1007: Tow ACV on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled ACV requiring recovery, and an operational ACV with crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To move the disabled ACV to the nearest collection point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables and tow bar.
4. Tow disabled ACV.
5. Disconnect towed vehicle.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-VOPS-1008: Conduct Demolition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an ACV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of the vehicle or its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Remove salvageable items.
2. Determine methods of destruction available.
3. Determine the items to be destroyed.
4. Destroy identified equipment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
G900 Grenade, Hand Incendiary Thermite AN-M14	4 grenades per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-AMPH-2001: Prepare for Waterborne Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit, mission with commander's intent, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of equipment and personnel prior to conducting operations in water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct operational planning.
2. Conduct Surf Observation (SUROB) report.
3. Assess sea state conditions.
4. Assess Modified Surf Index (MSI).
5. Submit report(s), as required.
6. Conduct risk assessment.
7. Verify load plans.

8. Verify completion of operational checks.
9. Identify designated Recovery Team(s) (RT) and safety boats.
10. Verify issue of personal flotation devices (PFD) with supplemental emergency breathing devices (SEBD).
11. Deliver Embarked Troop Brief (ETB).
12. Supervise emergency procedure rehearsals.
13. Submit personnel manifests.
14. Verify positive radio communication with all participating units.
15. Perform duties as splash team leader.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 Beachmaster Handbook
2. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
3. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
4. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-2002: Direct the Evacuation of Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne ACV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat.
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures afloat.
3. Supervise crewmember emergency procedures afloat.
4. Supervise embark personnel emergency procedures afloat
5. Direct execution of emergency distress signals.
6. Monitor and report water level triggers.
7. Direct personnel topside.

8. Conduct a side-to-side transfer.
9. Conduct a rough sea transfer.
10. Perform water survival techniques.
11. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: To complete this task, evacuated personnel must complete both a side-to-side and a rough sea transfer from a waterborne vehicle. These transfers can occur in any type of water training area, and should not be attempted in actual rough sea conditions unless during an actual emergency.

1833ACV-AMPH-2003: Control Unit Maneuver Afloat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, commander's intent, and an amphibious platform.

STANDARD: To embark/land surface assault elements and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive the order.
2. Negotiate waterway obstacles.
3. Perform embarkation procedures.
4. Secure vehicles with lashing assembly.

5. Perform debarkation procedures.
6. Conduct tactical launch.
7. Conduct over the horizon navigation if required (11.5 NM)
8. Maneuver within approach lane.
9. Perform Wave Guide Officer responsibilities.
10. Respond to tactical control measures.
11. Transition to shore.
12. Perform duties of Recovery Team (RT).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-2004: Conduct Shore-to-Shore Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This is to address the conduct of inland water crossing and riverine operations.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a water obstacle, personnel and equipment.

STANDARD: To negotiate a body of water without negative impact to personnel or equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Establish security posture.
2. Determine type of crossing.
3. Conduct site analysis.
4. Determine current velocity as required.

5. Determine slope of entry/exit points.
6. Determine/conduct amphibious drift technique as required.
7. Conduct riverine operations if required.
8. Consolidate forces.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-AMPH-2005: Conduct Surf Survival

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a distressed, waterborne AAV with crew and passengers.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and orderly evacuation followed by a swim to shore through the surf zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform check of personal flotation device (PFD).
2. Assist with the evacuation of embarked personnel into the ocean.
3. Exit the vehicle.
4. Enter the water with a buddy.
5. Employ PFD.
6. Perform water survival techniques.
7. Perform group survival techniques.
8. Assist swimmers, as required.
9. Swim toward shore with assigned buddy.
10. Swim through the surf zone.
11. Consolidate on the beach.
12. Conduct accountability.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star Parachute M126A1	1 signal per vehicle
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White Star Parachute M127A1	1 signal per vehicle

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Group survival techniques consist of the line and the ring techniques.

1833ACV-AMPH-2006: Respond to a Waterborne Emergency

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This task familiarizes AA unit leader with the actions to take when a vehicle within their section goes into waterborne emergency situation.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a combat loaded AA unit in a waterborne environment, and a distressed vehicle with passengers.

STANDARD: To provide recovery assistance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Evaluate the situation.
2. Report emergency situation to higher.
3. Determine support requirement.
4. Implement course of action.

5. Assess the situation.
6. Communicate to higher and adjacent.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: AAVs and ACVs require safety boats when operating in the water.

1833ACV-C2-2001: Respond to Signs/Markers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: To control ACV movement/action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to standard beach signs/markers.
2. Respond to standard naval signs/markers.
3. Respond to standard tactical signs/markers.
4. Respond to standard logistical signs/markers.
5. Respond to standard waterway navigational signs/markers (red right returning).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual-Technical
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Non-organic equipment to an AA unit, requires Beach Master Unit or Land Force Support Party support.

1833ACV-C2-2002: Employ C2 equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: To submit / receive reports and to enforce the communication procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC.
2. Update frequency hopping data using Electronic Remote Fill (ERF), as required.
3. Enforce standard radio procedures.
4. Adhere to local unit call signs and frequencies.
5. Enforce radio silence as required.
6. Determine the presence of Electronic Countermeasures (ECM).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-C2-2003: Submit Reports (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring information.

STANDARD: To inform higher headquarters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational or amphibious).
2. Generate report.
3. Forward report.
4. Utilize C2 systems to submit report to higher.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: 1. Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.
2. As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

1833ACV-C2-2004: Develop an Operation Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an mission from higher headquarters or a tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To issue a tactically sound plan that supports higher headquarters intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct planning and analysis.
2. Utilize the IPB.
3. Conduct METT-T analysis.
4. Determine assets available.
5. Issue Warning Order.
6. Conduct reconnaissance.
7. Coordinate with supported/supporting assets.
8. Complete planning.
9. Build terrain model/overlay.
10. Communicate the order to unit.
11. Supervise preparation and execution.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

1833ACV-C2-2005: Issue a Fragmentary Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To provide additional direction and guidance to crew/unit which supports commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine areas from the HHQ order that apply.
2. Issue the Warning Order.
3. Update situation and provide additional information.
4. Build terrain model/overlay.
5. Communicate the Fragmentary Order.
6. Supervise preparation and execution.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

1833ACV-COND-2001: March with a Fighting Load

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an individual weapon, a fighting load, and as part of a unit movement.

STANDARD: To complete a 15-kilometer march within four hours.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assemble the load for the march.
2. Don the load for the march.
3. Complete a 15 kilometer march.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1833. Prior to executing this event, Marines will conduct a 5K and 10K march with the fighting load. Individual field equipment weight is not to exceed 55 pounds.

1833ACV-GNRY-2001: Develop a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV in a defensive position, and a scenario.

STANDARD: To depict the battlespace, geometries of fire, and enemy situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify vehicle location.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference points.
4. Identify sectors of fire.
5. Identify PDF and FPL.
6. Identify dead space.
7. Identify listening/observation point position.
8. Identify obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-GNRY-2002: Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an ACV and ammunitions.

STANDARD: To establish a relationship between point of aim and center of beaten zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify a target between 700-1000 meter.
2. Lay reticle on center of target.
3. Engage target.
4. Move point of aim to center of beaten zone.
5. Reengage to confirm center of beaten zone.
6. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as required.
7. Secure weapon system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
3. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	8 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	8 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

1833ACV-GNRY-2003: Engage targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Gunner, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an ACV mounted weapons, fire commands, multiple targets and a scenario.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct immediate/ remedial actions if required.
4. Conduct barrel change if required.
5. Conduct reload of weapons system if required.
6. Communicate weapon status.
7. Manual fire if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
7. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
8. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM

Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

1833ACV-GNRY-2004: Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event enforces skills required of the Vehicle Commander to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with CROWS, crew and equipment, direction from higher, a tactical scenario, and a maneuver box.

STANDARD: So that the crew and weapons system are effectively employed in support of concept of operations during direct fire engagements to achieve desired effects on target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate weapon status to section leader.

2. Conduct the DIDEA process/ issue fire commands
3. Communicate engagement criteria with gunner.
4. Direct weapons rates of fire.
5. Orchestrate ammunition replenishment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, (1) familiarization, (2) evaluation. Individual will operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833ACV-GNRY-2005: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate engagement area.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-GNRY-2006: Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event enforces skills required of the Section Leader to coordinate a sections effort to defeat an attack by an opposing force and prevent it from achieving its objectives.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
2. Establish target priorities.
3. Establish target reference points (TRPs).
4. Define engagement areas (EAs).
5. Identify phase lines and trigger points.
6. Assign sectors of fires.
7. Issue fire commands.
8. Control rates of fire.
9. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per ACV

BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-GNRY-2007: Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control and maneuver, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to seize and maintain the initiative.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV section, a Tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: So that weapons are employed in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide engagement criteria.
2. Issue appropriate fire commands.
3. Control rates of fire.
4. Establish target priorities.
5. Conduct proper maneuver.
6. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)

5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-SUPT-2001: Brief Infantry on Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mechanized infantry mission and supported unit.

STANDARD: To employ AA unit in support of the concept of operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Brief the vehicle limitations/capabilities.
2. Brief the vehicle offense/defense employment.
3. Brief the weapon's employment.
4. Brief the logistical requirements.
5. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines.
6. Brief rear egress operator responsibilities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

1833ACV-SUPT-2002: Support Unit Specified Tasks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: The ACV platoon is able to provide a myriad of support missions to their supported units, which include route reconnaissance, screening, casualty evacuation, command and control, fire support team, support by fire, mortars transport, as well as limited resupply operations. The unit leader should be able to determine supportability based upon the associated specified task.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit, an operation order from higher, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Brief ACV capabilities to support CASEVAC, C2, FiST, SBF, EPW, and resupply operations.
2. Participate in the planning process.
3. Identify unit assigned task(s).

4. Determine requirement(s).
5. Task-organize.
6. Advise supported commander on employment techniques.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

1833ACV-SUPT-2003: Direct Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled/mired ACV and operational ACVs, with crews, and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess situation.
2. As required, provide security.
3. Identify types of assets required.
4. As required, submit reports/requests.
5. Prepare disabled/mired vehicle.
6. Perform recovery procedures.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Use of a capable recovery platform is optional.
2. Recovery operations include all types of environments, land and water.

1833ACV-TAC-2001: Conduct Mounted Navigation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, operations order, map, and a navigation device.

STANDARD: To arrive at the designated point(s) within the specified timeframe.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct map study.
2. Create route.
3. Prepare navigation devices (map, DAGR as required).
4. Brief route.
5. Move to a designated point.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-TAC-2002: Conduct Operations in Special Terrain (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: ACV units are capable of conducting operations in special terrain. Mobility limitations must be considered when employing the unit in riverine, jungle, desert, mountainous, urbanized terrains, cold weather climates, and during command and control in a denied or degraded environment (C2D2E).

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and an operation order from higher.

STANDARD: To adapt vehicle capabilities within environmental limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Receive IPB.
2. Identify mobility limitations.
3. Consider employment techniques.
4. Consider maintenance requirements.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-TAC-2003: Supervise Quartering Party Duties

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation order, and quartering party.

STANDARD: To prepare an assembly area for follow-on forces.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear area.
5. Direct improvements and security posture.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833ACV-TAC-2004: Lead an ACV Unit in Offensive Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Planning for and execution of offensive operations consist of: movement to contact, mechanized attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order from higher and tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Participate in IPB.
2. Participate in the planning process.
3. Recommend task-organization to best support concept of operations.
4. Select type of attack and formation maneuver based on METT-T.
5. Advise on movement technique.
6. Control ACV employment during movements.
7. Control signature management.
8. Direct ACV unit fires.
9. Prepare for follow-on missions.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-TAC-2005: Provide Estimates for Fire Support Planning

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and fire support assets.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver with effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify fire support assets.
2. Identify desired effects.
3. Identify fire support coordinating measures.
4. Plan targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions, avenues of approach, and avenues of withdrawal.
5. Identify priority targets.
6. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
7. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
8. Integrate updated fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
9. Disseminate fire support plan.
10. Continually refine the fire support plan based on METT-T.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

1833ACV-TAC-2006: Lead an ACV Unit in Defensive Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order from higher and tactical scenario.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Execute planning.
2. Recommend defensive type.
3. Recommend task organization.
4. Direct fire planning.
5. Integrate obstacle plan.
6. Execute offense planning considerations.
7. Conduct leader's recon.
8. Issue order.
9. Occupy defense area.
10. Execute priorities of work and rehearsals.
11. Develop security plan.
12. Develop unit sustainment plan.
13. Achieve decisive contact.
14. Direct ACV unit fires.
15. Submit reports.
16. Direct consolidation and reorganization.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).

2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-TRNG-2001: Evaluate ACV Gunnery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Vehicle Crew Evaluator

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an ACV unit, simulations, ammunition, evaluation material, training area, and references.

STANDARD: To identify gunnery training effectiveness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Enforce gunnery training standards.
2. Train and evaluate GT-I and GT-II.
3. Train and augment evaluation of individuals/crews conducting weapon systems qualification.
4. Conduct gunnery AAR.
5. Maintain gunnery records management.
6. Perform Instructor Operator (IO)/Senior Instructor Operator (SIO) responsibilities.
7. Perform other duties as directed by the Master Gunner.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet
2. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

1833ACV-TRNG-2002: Develop Surface Danger Zones

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement to conduct a live-fire training event.

STANDARD: To ensure all expended ordnance falls within a designated safe area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify weapon systems and ammunition.
2. Construct weapon systems and ammunition applicable Surface Danger Zone (SDZ).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety

1833ACV-TRNG-2003: Design Ranges in Support of Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the requirement to conduct training in the absence of preplanned ranges.

STANDARD: To accomplish safe and effective standards based training.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with external agencies as required.
2. Coordinate with higher headquarters.
3. Apply range regulations.
4. Develop and implement control measures.
5. Construct ranges.
6. Establish communication requirements in support of range operations.
7. Determine resource requirements in support of range operations.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCO 1553.3_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
3. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety
4. MCO 8020.10_ Marine Corps Explosives Safety Management Program
5. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

1833ACV-TRNG-2004: Facilitate Employment of Vehicle Mounted Weapons Systems

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit preparing to conduct gunnery qualification.

STANDARD: To engage threats.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the geometry of fires of individual weapons in support of maneuver.
2. Identify methods of fire and control.
3. Identify limitations/capabilities of vehicle mounted weapons.
4. Identify considerations in the employment of vehicle obscuration.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live-fire (Gate to Live-Fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1833ACV-TRNG-2005: Facilitate Simulation Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit annual training plan.

STANDARD: To achieve set standards through simulation prior to the use of actual vehicles, weapons, and ammunition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training hardware.
2. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training software.
3. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training scenarios.
4. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training facilities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Master, Senior, and Instructor Operator Certificate for Simulator.

1833ACV-TRNG-2006: Manage Gunnery Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given unit annual training plan.

STANDARD: To maintain gunnery proficiency.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify requirements for the short, mid, long-range training plans.
2. Plan range/training area availability in RFMSS.
3. Track, forecast, and submit ammunition requests.
4. Supervise implementation of the unit gunnery training program.
5. Determine the units gunnery proficiency and formulate corrective action.
6. Supervise all testing on all GST task specific to their weapon platform.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-TRNG-2007: Manage Unit Training Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify Mission Essential Task List (METL).
2. Assess unit readiness.
3. Prioritize training requirements.
4. Develop short and mid-range plans as appropriate.
5. Schedule required training.
6. Schedule training cycles.
7. Conduct backward planning.
8. Identify available training resources and align with training priorities.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833ACV-TRNG-2008: Develop Unit Exercise

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and commander's training guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure combat readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify collective and individual training events from T&R manuals.
2. Identify live, virtual, and constructive training venues.
3. Identify resource requirements.
4. Develop a scheme of maneuver.
5. Develop opposing force plan.
6. Develop training assessment plan.
7. Develop after action review.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 1553.3_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program
2. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833ACV-TRNG-2009: Lead an After Action Review (AAR)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit and a completed event/operation.

STANDARD: To identify surfaces and gaps of an exercise.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Designate area for after action.
2. Account for all unit and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observations during event.
4. Engage all personnel for inputs.
5. Compile information obtained and submit to higher (Topic/ Discussion/ Recommendation).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide
2. MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

1833ACV-VOPS-2001: Conduct a Risk Assessment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given scenario and environment.

STANDARD: To identify and mitigate hazards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify and document hazards.
2. Identify, develop, and document the assessment of hazards.
3. Make and document risk decisions.
4. Document and implement controls.
5. Supervise risk management.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-VOPS-2002: Initiate Administrative Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, identified discrepancy, and GLOG-MC access.

STANDARD: To ensure maintenance action items are recorded for repair.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Open service request in GLOG-MC.
2. Create task in GLOG-MC.

3. Submit to organizational maintenance.
4. Report discrepancy.
5. Complete equipment service requests.
6. Verify discrepancy is documented on the Maintenance Production Report (MPR).

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: GLOG Simulator

1833ACV-VOPS-2003: Monitor the Maintenance Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Reconciliation is a formal process designed to bring together the operator and maintenance section. This process is designed to ensure that all maintenance discrepancies are properly identified and captured within GCSS-MC in an effort to gain a better understanding of vehicle readiness as it relates to the operational environment.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Maintenance Production Report (MPR) and GCSS-MC access.

STANDARD: To ensure completion of preventative/corrective maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Reconcile discrepancies.
2. Reconcile job status.
3. Reconcile parts status.
4. Reconcile job completion.
5. Close task upon completion.
6. Reconcile SL-3.
7. Report readiness.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

1833ACV-VOPS-2004: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To ensure all required PMCS is conducted.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify PMCS of the vehicle components are completed as required.
2. Verify PMCS of the weapon systems are completed.
3. Verify PMCS of the special tools are completed.
4. Verify lubrication is completed.
5. Conduct reconciliation.
6. Verify operational checklists are completed.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)
2. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

1833ACV-VOPS-2005: Supervise Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with crew.

STANDARD: To verify operations status/report discrepancies.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify completion of pre-operation checklist.
2. Verify completion of during operation checklist.
3. Verify completion of at-halt operation checklist.
4. Verify completion of after operation checklist.
5. Verify completion of pre-water operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 10

AA BATTALION LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	10000	10-2
EVENT CODING	10001	10-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	10002	10-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	10003	10-2
INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	10004	10-2

CHAPTER 10

AA BATTALION LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

10000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Assault Amphibian Battalion low density MOS events that are not captured in their parent T&R. These events illustrate the unique tasks that are executed specifically in an AA Battalion by the 28XX and 06XX MOS.

10001. EVENT CODING

Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with either "06XX" or "28XX" indicating that the event is for that low density MOS.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the battalion and company level are:

C2 - Command and Control

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

10002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

10003. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
2000 Level Events		
06XX-C2-2001	Train Supported Unit on C2 Communication System	10-2
28XX-C2-2101	Advise Supported Unit on C2 Communication System	10-3

10004. INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

06XX-C2-2001: Train Supported Unit on C2 Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 06XX

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AV Communications Variant.

STANDARD: To enhance the supported unit's proficiency with system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Instruct how to configure and operate AV communications suite.
2. Support using unit with developing TTPs for C7 operations.
3. Support using unit with higher headquarters and EKMS required documents/timelines.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported unit's operations/fires element is required to accomplish this task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. At the time of publishing this manual, the AA community did not have the ACV-Command vehicle or a Technical Manual (TM) for this vehicle. When the AA community acquires the ACV-C model with TM this event will be adjusted to include new TM as a change to the manual. This event currently remains specific to the AAVC7 and does not currently apply to the ACV.

28XX-C2-2101: Advise Supported Unit on C2 Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 28XX

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AV Communications Variant.

STANDARD: To enhance the supported unit's proficiency with system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist with communication suite configuration.
2. Assist supported unit with developing TTPs for communications vehicle operations.
3. Assist supported unit with trouble shooting system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

UNITS/PERSONNEL: A supported unit's operations/fires element is required to accomplish this task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. At the time of publishing this manual, the AA community did not have the ACV-Command vehicle or a Technical Manual (TM) for this vehicle. When the AA community acquires the ACV-C model with TM this event will be adjusted to include new TM as a change to the manual. This event currently remains specific to the AAVC7 and does not currently apply to the ACV.

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

ACRONYMS

AAV - amphibious assault vehicle
ACV - amphibious combat vehicle
ACT - accuracy completeness time sequence
ACTS - Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence
APTS - advanced presentation and training skills
AR - Active Reserve
ASTB-E - Aviation Selection Test Battery Series-E
AT4C - advanced tool for coaching
BIC - billet information code
CAPT - Captain
CAR - commander's attainment report
CBRN - chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear
CBT - computer-based training
CG - commanding general
CMC - Commandant of the Marine Corps
CMR - consolidated memorandum receipt
CO - commanding officer
COA - course of action
CONPLAN - contingency plan
CONUS - continental United States
COT - consecutive overseas tours
CPL - Corporal
CRP - combat readiness percentage; command recruiting program
CSR - consolidated strength report
CWO - chief warrant officer
DEP - delayed entry program
DL - distance learning
DOD - Department of Defense
DoDFMR - Department of Defense Financial Management Regulation
DON - Department of the Navy
DRRS - Defense Readiness Reporting System
EAD - extended active duty
ECFC - enlisted career force controls
ECS - effective communication skills
EFMP - Exceptional Family Member Program
ENLPROM - enlisted promotions
EPM - enlistment processing manual
1STLT - First Lieutenant
FAI - functional area inspection
FLC - formal learning center
FMF - fleet Marine force
FY - fiscal year
GOV - government owned vehicle
GSA - Government Services Administration
GYSGT - Gunnery Sergeant
HOTAS - hands-on throttle and stick
HQMC - Headquarters, Marine Corps
IAW - in accordance with
IGMC - Inspector General of the Marine Corps
IIADT - incremental initial active duty training

IMI - individual multimedia instruction
IPOCT - in place consecutive overseas tours
IRAM - Individual Records Administration Manual
IRR - Individual Ready Reserve
IRT - Itinerant Recruiting Trip
JPIC - Joint Package Inspection Checklist
LATMOV - lateral move
LCPL - Lance Corporal
LDO - limited duty officer; line of duty
LOI - letter of instruction
LSL - lump sum leave
MAJ - Major
MARADMIN - Marine Administrative Message
MARCORPROMMAN - Marine Corps Promotion Manual
MARCORSEPMAN - Marine Corps Separation and Retirement Manual
MARFORRES - Marine Corps Forces Reserve
MASP - military academic skills program
MC2 - Marine Corps Communication and Consulting
MC3 - Marine Corps Communication, Coaching, and Counseling
MC4 - Marine Corps Communication, Consulting, Coaching, and Counseling
MCC - monitored command code
MCEOB - Marine Corps Enlisted Opportunities Book
MCI - Marine Corps Institute
MCMEDS - Marine Corps Medical Entitlements Data System
MCMP - Marine Corps mentoring program
MCO - Marine Corps order
MCOOB - Marine Corps Officer Opportunity Book
MCP3 - Marine Corps Performance, Programming and Philosophy
MCPS - Marine Corps Presentation Skills
MCRAMM - Marine Corps Reserve Administrative Management Manual
MCRC - Marine Corps Recruiting Command
MCRD - Marine Corps Recruit Depot
MCRISS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System
MCRISS-OSS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Officer Selection Station
MCRISS-PSRS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Prior Service Recruiting Station
MCRISS-PSRSS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Prior Service Recruiting Substation
MCRISS-RS - Marine Corps Recruiting Information Support System-Recruiting Station
MCROB - Marine Corps Reserve Opportunity Book
MCT - Marine Corps Task
MCTFSPRIM - Marine Corps Total Force Reporting Instructions Manual
MCTIMS - Marine Corps Training Information Management System
MCTL - Marine Corps Task List
MECEP - Marine Corps Enlisted Commissioning Education Program
MEPCOM - Military Entrance Processing Command
MEPS - Military Entrance Processing Station
MET - mission essential task
METL - mission essential task list
MGIB-R - Montgomery GI Bill-Reserve
MGYSGT - Master Gunnery Sergeant
MIRS - USMEPCOM Integrated Resource System
MISSO - Manpower Information Systems Support Officer
MOJT - Marine on-the-job training
MOL - Marine online

MOS - military occupational specialty
MSC - major subordinate command
MSGT - Master Sergeant
MUD - Merkel Unit Designator
NAMI - Naval Aerial Medical Institute
NAVMC - Navy Marine Corps
NIDT - Non-Instrumented Drug Test
NMCI - Navy Marine Corps Communication Information
NWA - new working applicant
OCHF - Operations Chief
OCM - Officer Commissioning Manual
OCONUS - outside the continental United States
OIC - officer in charge
OPFOR - opposing force; opposition force
OPLAN - operational plan
OPNAV - Office of the Chief of Naval Operations
OPNAVINST Chief of Naval Operations instruction
OPS - operations
OPSO - operations officer
ORM - operational risk management
OSO - officer selection officer
OSS - officer selection station
OST - officer selection team
PAC - prospect applicant card
PADD - projected active duty date
PAR - Performance and Review
PFC - Private First Class
PSEP - prior service enlistment program
PSF - public speaking forum
PSR - prior service recruiter
PSRS - prior service recruiting station
PSRSS - prior service recruiting substation
PTAD - permissive temporary additional duty
PVT - Private
QC - quality control
QCIS - quality control SITREP
QSN - quota serial number
RAV - Retention Assist Visit
RECLP - Reserve Enlisted Commissioning Program
RELM - Reenlistment Extension Lateral Move
RI - Recruiter Instructor
ROEP - Reserve Option Enlistment Program
RS - Recruiting Station
RSCE - Recruiting Station Command Element
RSS - Recruiting Substation
RTF - recruiter training file
RUC - reporting unit code
S&R - Schedule and Results
SAT - Systems Approach to Training
SAV - staff assist visit
SDA - special duty assignment
SECNAVINST - Secretary of the Navy instruction
SGT - Sergeant
SGTMAJ - Sergeant Major
SITREP situation report
SMB - SNCOIC Management Book
SMCR - select Marine Corps reserve

SME - subject matter expert
SMOS - supplementary MOS
SNCO - staff noncommissioned officer
SNCOIC - staff noncommissioned officer in charge
SOP - standing operating procedure
SOS - statement of service
SOU - statement of understanding
SRB - selective reenlistment bonus
SRI - Systematic Recruiting Inspection
SRIP - Selected Reserve Incentive Program
SSGT - Staff Sergeant
T&R - training and readiness
T/O - table of organization
TECOM - Training and Education Command
TIP - training input plan
TMS - Training Management System
UMIS - Unit Manpower Information Sheet
UTM - unit training management
WO - Warrant Officer
XO - executive officer

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Publication 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

A

After Action Review. A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

Assessment. An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

C

Chaining. A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-Level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-Level. When a higher level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

Collective Event. A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

Collective Training Standards (CTS). Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

Combat Readiness Cycle. The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP). The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-Coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

Condition. The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

Core Competency. Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

Core Capabilities. Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

Core Plus Capabilities. Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

Core Plus Skills. Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-Level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-Level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the

commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

D

Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

Deferred Event. A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-Coded" events.

Delinquent Event. An event becomes delinquent when a unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

E

Evaluation. Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

E-Coded Event. An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

Event Component. The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

Event (Training). 1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. 2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

Exercise Commander (EC). The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: 1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, 2) may designate an exercise director, 3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, 4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

Exercise Director (ED). Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: 1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. 2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. 3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. 4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/events prescribed by the EC. 5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

M

Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program. The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s). A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R Manual; all events in the T&R Manual support a MET.

Mission Essential Task List (METL). Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R Manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, operational plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

O

Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO). OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

P

Performance Step. Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a Marine unit must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under

operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (may necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form). Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school).

Prerequisite Event. Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

R

Readiness (DOD). Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

S

Section Skill Tasks. Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

Simulation Training. Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-Coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

Standard. A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

Sustainment Training. Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.

Systems Approach to Training (SAT). An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

T

Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG). A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: 1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; 2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; 3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; 4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; 5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

Technical Exercise Controller (TEC). The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TECG and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

Training Plan. Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

Training Task. This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

U

Unit CRP. Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-Coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

Unit Evaluation. All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units and units' task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

Unit Training Management (UTM). Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime

mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

W

Waived Event. An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX C

CLASS V(W) REQUIREMENTS

Ammunition was calculated based on 100% of Table of Organization for individual training events and 100% of Table of Equipment for collective training events. The below chart depicts the total annual ammunition requirement for an AA battalion and its personnel to train to standard on all events contained in this T&R Manual. Training events which list ammunition but do not require the expenditure of rounds have not been included in the below numbers. Dummy ammunition has been calculated based on an estimate of the total number of rounds required to adequately support the various training events that call for the particular DODIC.

DODIC	DESCRIPTION	3d AABN	2d AABN	4th AABN	TOTAL
A111	Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	5,110	5,110	2,044	
A131	Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	56,000	56,000	22,400	
A143	Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	30,100	30,100	12,100	
A576	Cartridge, Caliber .50 API M8/API-T M20 LNKD AC	366000	345,000	124,600	
A598	Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Linked	19,600	18,200	9,450	
A560	Cartridge, .50 Cal Dummy	1,600	1,600	800	
BA55	Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	62,392	51,600	27,168	
M472	Cartridge, 40mm Dummy	768	768	384	
GG24	Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Screening	1,704	1,704	720	
L311	Signal, Illumination Ground Red St	227	227	95	
L312	Signal, Illumination Ground White St	227	227	95	

Gunnery Ammunition Requirements

The table below represents the ammunition allocation per the TC 3-20.31 manual. This represents Crew, Section, and Platoon gunnery

training and qualifications.

GUNNERY AMMUNITION TOTALS(*)				
GUNNERY TABLE/EVENT	50 Cal	40mm TP-T	A598 (.50 Blank)	REMARKS
ZERO	50	16	0	
CREW GUNNERY				
GT II Simulations	0	0	0	Gate To Live-Fire(GTLF)
GT III(Proficiency)	0	0	0	Dry Fire
GT IV (Basic)	400	56	0	Live fire practice prior to qualification table
GT V (Crew Practice)	400	56	0	Live fire practice prior to qualification table
GT VI (Crew Qualification)	400	56	0	Qualification table.
AV TOTAL	1250	184	0	Ammunition Requirements for 1 Crew to conduct gunnery
SECTION GUNNERY				
GT VII (Intermediate Section Proficiency)	0	0	350	MILES/Dry
GT VIII (Intermediate Section Practice)	0	0	0	Dry fire practice prior to qualification
GT IX (Intermediate Section Qualification)	300	64	0	Live-fire section qualification. Gate to Advanced Gunnery
PLATOON GUNNERY				
GT X (Advanced Platoon Proficiency)	0	0	350	MILES/Dry
GT XI (Advanced Platoon Practice)	0	0	0	Dry fire practice prior to qualification
GT XII (Advanced Platoon	300	64	0	Live-fire platoon qualification

Qualification)				

NOTE: Ammunition totals should be based on a Battalions Table of Organization for Individual, Crew, and Platoon training and qualification events.

(*) Represents the quantity for each firing vehicle.

Totals are based on 213 Crews firing Crew Qualification once a year (active) and 90 crews firing Crew Qualification (Reserve), and Combat Assault Company (15).

8 Platoons will qualify Platoon Gunnery at each Active Battalion and 3 Platoons will qualify at the Reserves.

Each Section in a Line Platoon in a Line Company (36 Sections) will shoot section Gunnery (Active). EXCEPTION 3rd AABN will qualify 4 additional Section in support of UDP.

Each Section in a Line Platoon in a Line Company (24 Sections) in the reserves will qualify every 12 Months.

CAB will conduct Section (24) and Platoon (6) Gunnery for sustainment while on UD

40mm TP-T is the only DODIC that can be shot on pop up targets.

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX D

SIMULATION

Listed in this appendix are applicable simulators/simulations available to improve training for both individual Marines and unit training. Simulators and simulations provide the capability to develop and hone core and core plus competencies and capabilities. Accordingly, the use of training modeling and simulation systems for appropriate T&R events can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time, cost, and risk. For more information regarding training Modeling & Simulation (M&S) Systems, review website: https://www.candp.marines.mil/Programs/Focus-Area-2-Training-Simulation/

1. Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer (SAVT) - SAVT enhances operational readiness and tactical proficiency of USMC Joint Terminal Attack Controllers (JTAC), Forward Observers (FO), and Forward Air Controllers (FAC). The simulator provides Marines with a virtual environment for training using scenarios that require the placement of tactical ordnance on selected targets using Joint Close Air Support (JCAS) and Observed Fire procedures. These scenarios allow for practical application of Naval Surface Fire Support(NSFS), artillery and mortar fire, neutralization, suppression, illumination, interdiction and harassment fire missions.

2. Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer (ISMT) - uses simulation to instill and sustain Marines and Sailors in marksmanship fundamentals, crew served weapons employment, call for fire, and tactical decision making. A standalone ISMT can support up to five firing points while simulating known and unknown distance ranges, or eight assigned weapons while executing tactical scenarios within Virtual Battlespace (VBS). When three ISMTs are networked together to form an Infantry Squad Trainer (IST), the system can support 15 firing points while simulating known and unknown distance ranges, or up to twenty-four assigned weapons while executing tactical scenarios within VBS.

3. Family of Combat Vehicle Training Systems (FCVTS) - FCVTS consists of two separate simulation systems: Combat Convoy System (CCS) and Combat Vehicle Training System (CVTS), which itself hosts three separate simulations:

a. The CCS provides Marines combat convoy team skills in variable terrain and weather environments in basic and advanced convoy operations such as resupply, patrol, logistics support, high-value target extraction, MEDEVAC, call for close air support and artillery, and procedures for use of weapons compliance with the ROE. Marines receive training in vehicle, command and control, reaction to IED attacks and countermeasures to ambushes, attacks and enemy tactics in military operations.

b. The CVTS provides M1A1 Main Battle Tank, Light Armored Vehicle, and Assault Amphibious Vehicle gunnery training to the individual, collective (crew, section, and platoon), with combined arms and joint training scenarios. CVTS supports gunnery proficiency, weapons platform familiarization, tactical training in target acquisition, identification and engagement with weapons appropriate for each platform. CVTS provides training and sustainment while deployed on ships and in remote combat outposts.

4. Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE)- DVTE is a laptop PC based simulation system developed in order to sustain individual, team, and unit critical war fighting cognitive skills associated with the application of combined arms, squad, and platoon level tactics, various Recognition Of Combatants (ROC) packages and language/cultural training. DVTE is capable of emulating organic and supporting Infantry Battalion weapons systems and training scenarios to facilitate Training and Readiness (T&R) based training while aboard ship, forward deployed, in garrison or schoolhouse environments.

5. The MAGTF Tactical Warfare Simulation (MTWS)- MTWS is the Marine Corps' only constructive, aggregate-level simulation system used to support the training of Marine commanders and their battle staffs in MAGTF war-fighting principles/concepts and as well as associated command and control procedures. MTWS is designed to support the training of commanders and their staffs in exercises involving live, virtual and constructive (LVC) land, air and Naval forces at all operational command levels. The system supports all levels of command throughout the Marine Expeditionary Force (MEF) and Joint Task Force (JTF).

6. Combined Arms Command and Control Trainer Upgrade System (CACCTUS)- CACCTUS is a combined arms staff training system that, enable comprehensive Marine Corps staff, unit, and team training at home station Combined Arms Staff Training (CAST) facility. Distributed training involving CAST facilities is now available across the Marine Corps. CACCTUS is an upgrade to the USMC's CAST that provides fire support training for the Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) elements up to and including the Marine Expeditionary Brigade (MEB) level. Using the system components and simulation capabilities, 2D and 3D visuals, interfaced C4I, synthetic terrain, and an After Action Review (AAR), CACCTUS immerses trainees in a realistic, scenario-driven environment. The simulated scenarios enable commanders and their battle staffs to train or rehearse combined arms tactics, techniques, procedures and decision-making processes prior to any physical engagement. In addition, CACCTUS can provide training across live, virtual, and constructive training networks through interoperability with appropriate Command, Control, Communication, Computers, and Intelligence (C4I) systems in a training environment.

7. Assault Amphibious Vehicle-Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)- The AAV-TT is a non-deployable, stand-alone interactive simulation training platform. The AAV-TT utilizes surplus AAV Turret and Upgunned Weapons Station (i.e., M-2 & Mk-19) modified to enable integration with a virtual training environment. In order to provide training of precision gunnery, weapons employment and crew coordination to individuals and crews, the AAV-TT consists of instructor/operator station, driver station, AAV turret, and intercom system. High-fidelity computer generated scenarios enable conduct of Gate-to-Live-Fire (GTLF), in addition to tactical decision making and maneuvering at the platoon level. The AAV-TT incorporates a driver's station with a 2500 field of view screen and vehicle controls, and utilizes tactical CVC helmets to allow crew coordination training between the vehicle commander in the turret, the crewmember in the driver's station and the Instructor/Operator.

8. The Amphibious Assault Mission Trainer (AAMT)- As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the

capabilities of the approved system. The AAMT is intended to be a series of interconnected, interactive simulated training platforms that will instill basic skills at the entry-level, while providing robust sustainment training applications for the Fleet Marine Force and Marine Forces Reserve. The virtual environment will provide realistic scenarios that support navigation ashore and afloat; entry, exit, and maneuver within Navy ships & surf zones; Formation Movement Ashore and Afloat; Offensive/Defensive Actions from planning to execution; precision gunnery (to include the Gate-to-Live fire), and the ability to train in high-risk or unavailable environments. Designed primarily for operations at the section level, the AAMT consists of instructor/operator station, 5 simulators that replicate all three crewmember compartments, and the weapons station and communications equipment, enabling tactical decision making and maneuvering.

9. Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET)- The SVET is an underwater escape trainer designed to duplicate the conditions a Marine may face as a crewmember or embarked personnel if he or she is trapped in a vehicle upside down and/or under water. The SVET is used to train egress from rollover/submerged ground vehicles reinforcing operational and emergency procedures.

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX E

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS	1000	E-2
1000 LEVEL GUNNERY INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	1001	E-3
2000 LEVEL GUNNERY INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	1002	E-29
3000 LEVEL GUNNERY COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	1003	E-46
4000 LEVEL GUNNERY COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	1004	E-53
5000 LEVEL GUNNERY COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	1005	E-56

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX E

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

Listed in this appendix are the individual and collective gunnery events utilized within the AAV T&R manual.

INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENTS

Event Code	E-Coded	Event
1803AAV-GNRY-1001	NO	Conduct Gun Table I
1803AAV-GNRY-1002	NO	Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons
1803AAV-GNRY-1003	NO	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)
1803AAV-GNRY-1004	NO	Create a Fire Plan Sketch
1803AAV-GNRY-1005	NO	Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)
1803AAV-GNRY-1006	NO	Engage Targets (S/L)
1803AAV-GNRY-1007	NO	Direct Unit Fires (S/L)
1803ACV-GNRY-1001	NO	Conduct Gun Table I
1803ACV-GNRY-1002	NO	Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons
1803ACV-GNRY-1003	NO	Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)
1803ACV-GNRY-1004	NO	Create a Fire Plan Sketch
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	NO	Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station
1803ACV-GNRY-1006	NO	Engage Targets (S/L)
1803ACV-GNRY-1007	NO	Direct Unit Fires (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-1001	NO	Conduct Gun Table I
1833AAV-GNRY-1002	NO	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons
1833AAV-GNRY-1003	NO	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station
1833AAV-GNRY-1004	NO	Utilize a Range Card (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-1005	NO	Engage Targets (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-1006	NO	Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station
1833AAV-GNRY-2001	NO	Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station
1833AAV-GNRY-2002	NO	Develop a Range Card (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-2003	NO	Engage Targets (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	NO	Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-2005	NO	Create a Fire Plan Sketch
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	NO	Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)
1833AAV-GNRY-2007	NO	Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	NO	Conduct Gun Table I
1833ACV-GNRY-1002	NO	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons
1833ACV-GNRY-1003	NO	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS) (S/L)

1833ACV-GNRY-1004	NO	Utilize a Range Card (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	NO	Engage Targets (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-2001	NO	Develop a Range Card (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-2002	NO	Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station
1833ACV-GNRY-2003	NO	Engage targets (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-2004	NO	Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-2005	NO	Create a Fire Plan Sketch
1833ACV-GNRY-2006	NO	Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)
1833ACV-GNRY-2007	NO	Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)
AA-GNRY-3001	NO	Conduct Gun Table II (S)
AA-GNRY-3002	NO	Conduct Gun Table III
AA-GNRY-3003	NO	Conduct Gun Table IV
AA-GNRY-3004	NO	Conduct Gun Table V
AA-GNRY-3005	YES	Conduct Gun Table VI
AA-GNRY-4001	NO	Conduct Gun Table VII (S)
AA-GNRY-4002	NO	Conduct Gun Table VIII
AA-GNRY-4003	YES	Conduct Gun Table IX
AA-GNRY-5001	NO	Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)
AA-GNRY-5002	NO	Conduct Gun Table XI
AA-GNRY-5003	YES	Conduct Gun Table XII

1000 LEVEL GUNNERY INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1803AAV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV weapons system, and all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7, & 12, prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from UGWS.
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove M2 HB .50 cal machine gun from UGWS.
7. Boresight the UGWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	32 rounds per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course Programs of Instruction.
3. Performance step 4 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1803AAV-GNRY-1002: Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK19, M2, or M240 machine gun and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

1803AAV-GNRY-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 9-1040-267-20&P Organizational Maintenance Manual, M257 Grenade Launcher

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1803AAV-GNRY-1004: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle unit in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide interlocking fires and fields of mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate engagement area.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803AAV-GNRY-1005: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a boresighted AAV with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure system switch is set to safe.
2. Lay reticle on center of target.

3. Select appropriate zeroing options from the menu.
4. Engage Targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803AAV-GNRY-1006: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to evaluate the Platoon Commander's ability to engage stationary or moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary vehicle.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons and ammunition.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct fire commands.
4. Conduct immediate/remedial actions if required.
5. Conduct barrel change if required.
6. Conduct reload of weapons systems if required.
7. Execute directed rates of fire.
8. Communicate weapons status.
9. Manual fire if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification.
3. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).

1803AAV-GNRY-1007: Direct Unit Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a task-organized force, tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Conduct Battle Damage Assessment
11. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803ACV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV weapons system, and all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7 & 12, prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm grenade machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire. Apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from the Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS).
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload and remove a CROWS mounted M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
7. Boresight the CROWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per ACV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Officer Program of Instruction.

1803ACV-GNRY-1002: Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK19, M2, machine gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

1803ACV-GNRY-1003: Execute Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure system power is off.
2. PMCS CROWS exterior components.
3. PMCS CROWS interior components.
4. Lubricate CROWS components.
5. Power up CROWS.
6. Operate electrical components.
7. Operate manual components.
8. Complete CROWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

1803ACV-GNRY-1004: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine section fire plan sketches firing data.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate platoon level engagement area criteria.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1803ACV-GNRY-1005: Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, and ammunition.

STANDARD: To establish a relationship between point of aim and center of beaten zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify a target between 700-1000 meter.
2. Lay reticle on center of target.
3. Engage target.
4. Move point of aim to center of beaten zone.
5. Reengage to confirm center of beaten zone.
6. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as required.
7. Secure weapon system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
3. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	8 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	8 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1803ACV-GNRY-1006: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV mounted weapons, fire commands, multiple targets and a scenario.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct fire commands.
4. Conduct immediate/ remedial actions if required.
5. Conduct barrel change if required.
6. Conduct reload of weapon systems if required.
7. Communicate weapon status.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
7. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
8. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: 1. Hours are captured in each of the Gunnery Tables.
2. As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. The total ammunition will be used to conduct 2 iterations; (1) for familiarization and (2) for evaluation. Individuals will operate both weapon systems.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification day and night.
3. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
4. This task will be performed to standard during the gunnery tables. The Assault Amphibian School (AAS) can modify live fire gunnery tables to satisfy school graduation requirements.

1803ACV-GNRY-1007: Direct Unit Fires (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a task-organized force, tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Emplace weapon systems.
2. Develop fire control measures.
3. Determine fire pattern.
4. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
5. Determine engagement priority.
6. Direct weapons control status.
7. Determine engagement technique.
8. Issue fire command.
9. Control rates of fire.
10. Conduct Battle Damage Assessment.
11. Send Reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. The total ammunition will be used to conduct 2 iterations; (1) for familiarization and (2) for evaluation. Individuals will operate both weapon systems.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833AAV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given am AAV, weapons systems, and all associated training devices and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7 & 12, prior to the conduct live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm machine gun.
4. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from UGWS.
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove M2 HB .50 cal machine gun from UGWS.
7. Boresight the UGWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test

2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	32 rounds per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course Programs of Instruction.
3. Performance step 4 is a MOS-Specific Physical Standard required for the MOS of 1803. See Appendix F for further detail.

1833AAV-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given MK19, M240B, and M2 machine guns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2

3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240, M240C, M240E1, M240L, M240N

1833AAV-GNRY-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. PMCS turret exterior.
2. PMCS turret interior.
3. Lubricate turret components.
4. Operate electrical components.
5. Operate manual components.
6. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 9-1040-267-20&P Organizational Maintenance Manual, M257 Grenade Launcher

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Requires M257 test equipment.

1833AAV-GNRY-1004: Utilize a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, a completed range card, and UGWS.

STANDARD: To utilize range card to engage targets with Upgunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the range card.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference point.
4. Identify vehicle location.
5. Identify sectors of fire.
6. Identify principal direction of fire (PDF) and final protective line (FPL).
7. Identify dead space.
8. Identify listening/observation point position(s).
9. Identify obstacles.
10. Apply the Detect, Identify, Decide, Engage, Assess (DIDEA) process.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833AAV-GNRY-1005: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that validates operations of the UGWS from a stationary position against a stationary or moving target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with weapons, ammunition, and a fire command, while utilizing the DIDEA process.

STANDARD: To achieve desired weapons and UGWS operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Respond to fire command.
2. Fire UGWS with M2
3. Fire UGWS with MK19.
4. Conduct IA drills with UGWS if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine

BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)		16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one confirmation engagement during day light conditions and a night shoot.
3. Gunners will utilize a range card to engage targets.

1833AAV-GNRY-1006: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a boresighted AAV with crew, ammunition, and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To center the beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Verify thumb slide position.
2. Fire the MK19.
3. Adjust sight as required.
4. Fire the M2.
5. Make adjustments to T&E as required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
2. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1

3. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
4. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night) MK281 Mod 1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. Ammunition is either TP or HEDP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A555 or A576 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. B584 and A557 may be used to replace BA21 and A555.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV weapons system, and all associated training devices, and references.

STANDARD: To verify competencies in tasks 1-4, 6-7 & 12, prior to the conduct of live-fire gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify ammunition.
2. Identify armored fighting vehicles.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble and perform functions check on MK19 40mm grenade machine gun.

4. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload, and remove MK19 from CROWS.
5. Clear, disassemble, assemble, and perform functions check on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Install, load, attempt to fire, apply immediate action, unload and remove M2 HB .50 cal machine gun from CROWS.
7. Boresight the CROWS.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	100 rounds per ACV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	32 rounds per ACV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event is a prerequisite to be conducted prior to all vehicle mounted live-fire events.
2. The Assault Amphibian School will conduct a modified Gun Table I for the Assault Amphibian Crewmember Course Programs of Instruction.

1833ACV-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given MK19 and M2 machine guns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components.
4. Report worn or defective parts.

5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Perform function check.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

1833ACV-GNRY-1003: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS) (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with associated SL-3, materials, and reference(s).

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure system power is off.
2. PMCS CROWS exterior components.
3. PMCS CROWS interior components.
4. Lubricate CROWS components.
5. Power up CROWS.
6. Operate electrical components.
7. Operate manual components.
8. Complete CROWS pre-operation checklist.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
2. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
3. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
4. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-GNRY-1004: Utilize a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV, a completed range card, and a CROWS.

STANDARD: To utilize range card to engage targets with Common Remote Weapons System.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the range card.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference point.
4. Identify vehicle location.
5. Identify sectors of fire.
6. Identify principal direction of fire (PDF) and final protective line (FPL).
7. Identify dead space.
8. Identify listening/observation point position(s).
9. Identify obstacles.
10. Apply the Detect, Identify, Decide, Engage, Assess (DIDEA) process.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-GNRY-1005: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that validates operations of the CROWS from a stationary position against a stationary target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with weapons, ammunition, and a fire command, while utilizing the DIDEA process.

STANDARD: To achieve desired weapons and CROWS operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Respond to fire command.
2. Fire CROWS with M2
3. Fire CROWS With 40mm.
4. Conduct IA drills with CROWS if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
4. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
5. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
6. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
7. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
AA55 Cartridge, 12 Gauge Dummy MK242 Mod 0	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	16 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	16 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.
2. Gunners will fire one confirmation engagement during day light conditions and a night shoot.
3. Gunners will utilize a range card to engage targets.

2000 LEVEL GUNNERY INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1833AAV-GNRY-2001: Check Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7, inhibit zone aligning tool, and references.

STANDARD: To establish safe and effective fields of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Confirm the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Confirm Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths.
4. Confirm Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
2. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
3. TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool.

1833AAV-GNRY-2002: Develop a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV in a defensive position, and a scenario.

STANDARD: To depict the battlespace, geometries of fire, and enemy situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify vehicle location.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference points.
4. Identify sectors of fire.
5. Identify PDF and FPL.
6. Identify dead space.
7. Identify listening/observation point position.
8. Identify obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
4. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	1	Y

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833AAV-GNRY-2003: Engage Targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given AAV mounted weapons, fire commands, multiple targets and a scenario.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct immediate/remedial actions if required.
4. Conduct barrel change if required.
5. Conduct reload of weapon systems if required.
6. Execute directed rates of fire if required.
7. Communicate weapon status.
8. Manual fire if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
7. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2
8. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	4	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine

BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)		32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

1833AAV-GNRY-2004: Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Vehicle Commander to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with associated crew and equipment, a tactical scenario, and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ the crew effectively in support of concept of operations during direct fire engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate weapon status to section leader.
2. Conduct the DIDEA process/Issue Fire Commands.
3. Communicate engagement criteria with crew.
4. Direct weapons rates of fire.
5. Orchestrate ammunition replenishment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, (1) familiarization, (2) evaluation. Individual will operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-GNRY-2005: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate engagement area.
4. Illustrate dead space.

5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-GNRY-2006: Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
2. Establish target priorities.
3. Establish target reference points (TRPs).
4. Define engagement areas (EAs).
5. Identify phase lines and trigger points.
6. Assign sectors of fires.
7. Issue appropriate fire commands.
8. Control rates of fire.
9. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
4. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
5. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833AAV-GNRY-2007: Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons are employed with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Provide engagement criteria.
2. Issue appropriate fire commands.
3. Control rates of fire.
4. Establish target priorities.
5. Conduct proper maneuver.
6. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1
6. TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAV-TT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: Hours captured in the Gunnery Tables.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC		QUANTITY
A555	Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per AAV
A576	Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per AAV
B542	Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	54 rounds per AAV
BA55	Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per AAV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-GNRY-2001: Develop a Range Card (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV in a defensive position, and a scenario.

STANDARD: To depict the battlespace, geometries of fire, and enemy situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify vehicle location.
2. Identify main terrain features.
3. Identify target reference points.
4. Identify sectors of fire.
5. Identify PDF and FPL.
6. Identify dead space.
7. Identify listening/observation point position.
8. Identify obstacles.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM

Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	1	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833ACV-GNRY-2002: Zero the Common Remotely Operated Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an ACV and ammunitions.

STANDARD: To establish a relationship between point of aim and center of beaten zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify a target between 700-1000 meter.
2. Lay reticle on center of target.
3. Engage target.
4. Move point of aim to center of beaten zone.
5. Reengage to confirm center of beaten zone.
6. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as required.
7. Secure weapon system.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
3. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	8 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	8 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 50 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

1833ACV-GNRY-2003: Engage targets (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Gunner, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an ACV mounted weapons, fire commands, multiple targets and a scenario.

STANDARD: To deliver effective fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Scan for targets.
2. Respond to fire commands.
3. Conduct immediate/ remedial actions if required.
4. Conduct barrel change if required.
5. Conduct reload of weapons system if required.
6. Communicate weapon status.
7. Manual fire if required.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2
6. TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3
7. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
8. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	32 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	32 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:
1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

1833ACV-GNRY-2004: Direct Crew Gunnery Operations (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event enforces skills required of the Vehicle Commander to establish effective fire control, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to achieve decisive results.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV with CROWS, crew and equipment, direction from higher, a tactical scenario, and a maneuver box.

STANDARD: So that the crew and weapons system are effectively employed in support of concept of operations during direct fire engagements to achieve desired effects on target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate weapon status to section leader.
2. Conduct the DIDEA process/ issue fire commands
3. Communicate engagement criteria with gunner.
4. Direct weapons rates of fire.
5. Orchestrate ammunition replenishment.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per Marine
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per Marine

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, (1) familiarization, (2) evaluation. Individual will operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-GNRY-2005: Create a Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position, scenario, and vehicle range cards.

STANDARD: To identify overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Combine vehicle range cards.
2. Illustrate vehicles and firing data.
3. Illustrate engagement area.
4. Illustrate dead space.
5. Illustrate terrain.
6. Annotate orientation data.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations
3. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
4. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833ACV-GNRY-2006: Direct Section Fires in the Defense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event enforces skills required of the Section Leader to coordinate a sections effort to defeat an attack by an opposing force and prevent it from achieving its objectives.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV section, a tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: To employ weapons in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Provide engagement/disengagement criteria.
2. Establish target priorities.
3. Establish target reference points (TRPs).
4. Define engagement areas (EAs).
5. Identify phase lines and trigger points.
6. Assign sectors of fires.
7. Issue fire commands.
8. Control rates of fire.
9. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:
1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

---

1833ACV-GNRY-2007: Direct Section Fires in the Offense (S/L)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: This event enforces skills required of the Section Leader to establish effective fire control and maneuver, as demonstrated by the ability to rapidly acquire the enemy and mass the effects of fire to seize and maintain the initiative.

BILLETS: Assistant Section Leader, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL LEARNING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ACV section, a Tactical scenario and direction from higher.

STANDARD: So that weapons are employed in accordance with the principles of direct fire control.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Provide engagement criteria.
2. Issue appropriate fire commands.
3. Control rates of fire.
4. Establish target priorities.
5. Conduct proper maneuver.
6. Send reports.

PRIMARY REFERENCES:

1. BnO P3000.1_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations
2. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
3. MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)
5. TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)
6. TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Partial	S/L	AAMT	Crew Hours	2	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	300 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	300 rounds per ACV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Linked	64 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	64 rounds per ACV

ORDNANCE NOTES:

1. The primary ammunition is B542 40mm HEDP and A576 .50 Caliber 4 API/1 API-T. All other ammunition is secondary. (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets).
2. 300 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.
3. 2 runs will be conducted, prequalification and qualification. Crews can operate M2, 40MM, or both.

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

3000 LEVEL GUNNERY COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AA-GNRY-3001: Conduct Gun Table II (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table II, Simulations, is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets from a stationary and moving vehicle, during day and limited visibility in a simulated environment. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-2)

CONDITION: Given a vehicle specific simulated platform, scenario and Instructor-Operator (IO).

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum rating of qualified per simulated table. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-2)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Qualify 15 of 15 pre-live-fire exercises.
2. Qualify on 1 of 3 Pre-qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises.
3. Qualify on 1 of 3 qualification Gate to Live-Fire exercises.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	

INTERNAL SUPPORTED EVENTS:

AA-GNRY-4003	AA-GNRY-5003

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	6	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification.
2. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
3. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 12 months.
4. Pre-qualification and qualification must occur on different scenarios.

AA-GNRY-3002: Conduct Gun Table III

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table III, Proficiency, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-2)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-3)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803ACV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1001
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	AA-GNRY-3001	

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire.
2. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew crew.
3. This event will completed on the range as a dry run.

AA-GNRY-3003: Conduct Gun Table IV

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table IV, Basic, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-3)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets, and allotted ammunition in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-4)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7 Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	750 rounds per vehicle
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	400 rounds per AAV
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	750 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	400 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	750 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	56 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	120 rounds per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1.Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31
2. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

AA-GNRY-3004: Conduct Gun Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table V, Practice, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-4)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets, and allotted ammunition in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-5)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005

1833AAV-GNRY-2004 1833ACV-GNRY-1005 1833ACV-GNRY-2004

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	750 rounds per vehicle
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	400 rounds per AAV
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	750 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	400 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	750 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	56 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	120 rounds per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance with TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification.
2. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

AA-GNRY-3005: Conduct Gun Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Table VI, Qualification, is a single vehicle course that is designed to evaluate the crew's ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle, during both day and limited visibility conditions. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-5)

CONDITION: Given a fully operational AV, a certified vehicle crew evaluator, full sized targets, and allotted ammunition in a daylight and limited visibility environment.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements. (TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew Ch. 5, p. 5-5)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target.
2. Task #1: Engage a stationary target.
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target.
4. Task #3: Engage a moving target.
5. Task #4: Engage a stationary target.
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary and moving target.
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets.
8. Task #7: Engage multiple stationary targets.
9. Task #8: Engage a stationary and moving target.
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3001
AA-GNRY-3002	AA-GNRY-3003	AA-GNRY-3004

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1004	1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-C2-1004
1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Tracer M62 Linked	750 rounds per vehicle
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	400 rounds per AAV
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	750 rounds per ACV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	400 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	750 rounds per ACV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	56 rounds per AAV
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	120 rounds per ACV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Scenario development, vehicle posture and target presentation must adhere to the Required Performance Measures (RPMs) in accordance TC 3-20.31 with Training and Qualification
2. Crews will receive an overall qualification rating (Distinguished, Superior, Qualified, Unqualified) for Table VI based on the common scoring model dual qualification criteria(qualified tasks and total crew points) per the TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification.
3. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

4000 LEVEL GUNNERY COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AA-GNRY-4001: Conduct Gun Table VII (S)

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to fire and maneuver as a section. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery_, Ch. 18 p. 18-11)

CONDITION: Given an AV maneuver element section allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery_, Ch. 18, p. 18-11)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803ACV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1001
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	AA-GNRY-3005	

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-GNRY-2005	1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007
1833ACV-GNRY-2003	1833ACV-GNRY-2005	1833ACV-GNRY-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2007		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All Crews must have passed Gun table VI.

AA-GNRY-4002: Conduct Gun Table VIII

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks and prepare section for qualification. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-12)

CONDITION: Given an AV section, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-12)

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-GNRY-3005 AA-GNRY-4001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1833AAV-GNRY-2006
1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2003
1833ACV-GNRY-2006	1833ACV-GNRY-2007	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. This event can be completed on the range as a dry run.
2. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months.

AA-GNRY-4003: Conduct Gun Table IX

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IX is designed to evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-13)

CONDITION: Given an AV section, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets, and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-13)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3005
AA-GNRY-4001	AA-GNRY-4002	

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1833AAV-C2-2002	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-C2-2002
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2003	1833ACV-GNRY-2004
1833ACV-GNRY-2006	1833ACV-GNRY-2007	

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	1200 rounds per Section
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	1200 rounds per Section
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	256 rounds per Section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

5000 LEVEL GUNNERY COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AA-GNRY-5001: Conduct Gun Table X (S/L)

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-15)

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped platoon, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-15)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AA-GNRY-4003

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803AAV-GNRY-1007	1803ACV-GNRY-1006
1803ACV-GNRY-1007	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004
1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-GNRY-1005
1833ACV-GNRY-2003	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2007		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

SIMULATION EVALUATION:

SIMULATED	SUITABILITY	SIMULATOR	UNIT OF MEASURE	HOURS	PM
Yes	S/L	AAV-TT/AAMT	Crew Hours	4	Y

NOTES: As of the date of this manual, the AAMT is conceptual and not currently approved or funded. The AAMT concept was derived by analysis of the training tasks associated with operating the Amphibious Combat Vehicle and interviews with subject matter experts that identified training resource shortfalls or gaps. When the concept is approved and funded, this manual will be updated to reflect the capabilities of the approved system.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months

2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AA-GNRY-5002: Conduct Gun Table XI

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-16)

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped platoon, fully sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with the minimum rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-16)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
AA-GNRY-4003 AA-GNRY-5001

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803AAV-GNRY-1007	1803ACV-GNRY-1006
1803ACV-GNRY-1007	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2003
1833AAV-GNRY-2004	1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007
1833ACV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-2006	1833ACV-GNRY-2007

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:
1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months.
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.
3. This can be done as a dry run on the range.

AA-GNRY-5003: Conduct Gun Table XII

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

READINESS-CODED: NO

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XII is designed to evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live-fire environment. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-17)

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped platoon, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and operation order.

STANDARD: To pass with a minimum rating for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction. (MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery, Ch. 18, p. 18-17)

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PRIMARY REFERENCES: MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPLEMENTARY REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment
2. MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

CHAINED EVENTS:

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001	1803AAV-GNRY-1005	1803ACV-GNRY-1001
1803ACV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-1001	1833AAV-GNRY-1006
1833ACV-GNRY-1001	1833ACV-GNRY-2002	AA-GNRY-3005
AA-GNRY-4003	AA-GNRY-5001	AA-GNRY-5002

INTERNAL SUPPORTING EVENTS:

1803AAV-C2-1004	1803AAV-GNRY-1006	1803AAV-GNRY-1007
1803ACV-C2-1004	1803ACV-GNRY-1006	1803ACV-GNRY-1007
1833AAV-C2-2002	1833AAV-GNRY-1005	1833AAV-GNRY-2004

1833AAV-GNRY-2006	1833AAV-GNRY-2007	1833ACV-C2-2002
1833ACV-GNRY-1005	1833ACV-GNRY-2004	1833ACV-GNRY-2006
1833ACV-GNRY-2007		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC	QUANTITY
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Linked (M2 Links)	3600 rounds per Platoon
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 API-T M20 Linked	3600 rounds per Platoon
BA55 Cartridge, 40mm TP (Day/Night/Thermal) M918E1 (High Velocity)	768 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Sustainment interval for the SMCR will be 24 months.
2. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII.

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX F

AAV MOS-SPECIFIC PHYSICAL STANDARDS

1. Purpose. This appendix identifies AAV MOS-Specific Physical Standards (MSPS) as the ACV does not have any approved MSPS at this time. This appendix describes the execution of assessments designed to evaluate a Marine's physical capabilities, in order to provide Commanders reasonable assurance a Marine has the physical capacity to perform the regularly assigned and recurrent duties of the MOS.

2. Evaluation. Marines must either 'pass' or 'fail' event or performance step assessments to the standards set forth within this manual.

3. Requirements. The following events are to be performed to the standard contained within this appendix during Entry Level Training in order to achieve initial MOS qualification.

a. For the 1803 MOS:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001, Performance Step 4
1803AAV-VOPS-1001, Performance Step 3
1803AAV-VOPS-1007, Performance Step 3
0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, NAVMC 3500.44 Infantry T&R

b. For the 1833 MOS:

1833AAV-GNRY-1001, Performance Step 4
1833AAV-VOPS-1001, Performance Step 3
1833AAV-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 3
0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, NAVMC 3500.44 Infantry T&R

4. Evaluation Sequencing. The MOS-specific Physical Standards events are not intended to be conducted in a single, continuous session. However, if the Commander schedules these events to occur in sequence within a 24-hour period, adequate transition between events should permit Marines the opportunity to recover, stretch, hydrate, and prepare for the next event. Total rest permitted between events is determined at the Commander's discretion.

5. Uniform and Equipment

a. Fighting Load. See NAVMC 3500.44 (Infantry T&R Manual) Appendix F for the Fighting Load gear list. The Utility uniform may be substituted with the Combat Vehicle Crewman (CVC) uniform.

(1) This load will be worn/carried by MOSs listed within paragraph 3 when executing the following events:

1803AAV-VOPS-1001, performance step 3
1833AAV-VOPS-1001, performance step 3
0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, NAVMC 3500.44_ Infantry T&R

(2) Additional equipment carried for MOS-specific events is detailed in paragraph 6.

b. CVC Uniform

(1) The CVC uniform will be worn by MOSs listed within paragraph 3 when executing the following events:

1803AAV-GNRY-1001, performance step 4
1803AAV-VOPS-1007, performance step 3
1833AAV-GNRY-1001, performance step 4
1833AAV-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 3

(2) Additional equipment carried for MOS-specific events is detailed in paragraph 6.

c. Substituting Equipment. Marines may substitute surrogate items to replicate the weight of unavailable equipment. The total weight of the equipment carried will be within 10% of the total prescribed pack weight.

6. Events Assessed. The following paragraphs outline the expected conduct of assessments, in support of a factor of either MOS assignment or retention:

a. 1803AAV-VOPS-1001 and 1833AAV-VOPS-1001, Performance Step 3, Evacuate an injured crewmember proxy event.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is a clean-and-press. The clean-and-press will be a single repetition lift of an Olympic bar with a total weight of 115 lbs.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Clean and press an Olympic bar with a total weight of 115 lbs., and then lower to the deck.

(4) Required Equipment. One Olympic lifting bar with a total of 115 lbs. of weight.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin with feet shoulder width apart or under the hips. The bar should be above the boot laces at the start. Only the overhand grip can be used in this lift.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will execute a clean-and-press. While the clean-and-press occurs in a fluid motion, the first move of the lift is the clean. The clean begins by lifting the bar with arms locked, and the bar close to the body. The cleaning motion ends when the shoulders are fully shrugged and the hips, knees, and ankles are extended. At this point, drop underneath the bar to catch the weight at shoulder level. The next motion of the lift is the press. Dip by slightly breaking at the hips and knees, and then drive upward with the hips and shoulders until the arms are locked out and the upper arm is next to the ear.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to lift the Olympic bar, and to avoid 'lifting-with-their-back.' However, no penalty will be assessed if Marine chooses not to use their legs.

(d) Once elbow lock-out has occurred, the Olympic bar will be lowered in a fluid, controlled motion from shoulder-height, then to the deck, and neither thrown nor dropped. While lowering the surrogate to the deck, Marines must maintain a supportive curvature of the spine, and bend their knees.

b. 1803AAV-GNRY-1001 and 1833AAV-GNRY-1001, Performance Step 4, install and remove turret mounted weapons proxy event.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is similar to a clean-and-press wherein the Marine will clean-and-press a mock-up MK19 Heavy Machine Gun, and lower the mock-up back to ground-level.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Perform a single lift of a mock-up MK19 from ground to overhead, wherein the elbows are momentarily locked out.

(4) Required Equipment. One (1) Mock-up MK19 Heavy Machine Gun. Local commanders have the discretion to use a training aid of similar dimensions in place of a mock-up MK19 should the mock-up not be available. An actual MK19 may be used if the mock-up is not available.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will either stand erect or crouched-down with both feet flat-the-ground. Distance between the Marine's feet should be shoulder-width apart. The mock-up will be at rest, at the ground-level. The Marine can utilize either an overhand or underhand grip.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will lift the mock-up from the ground, to a point directly overhead, wherein the elbows are momentarily locked-out.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to generate the mock-up's upward momentum. However, no penalty will be assessed if Marines choose not to use their legs.

(d) Once elbow lock-out has occurred, the mock-up will be lowered in a fluid, controlled motion from shoulder-height, then to the deck, and neither thrown nor dropped. While lowering the mock-up to the deck, Marines must maintain a supportive curvature of the spine, and bend their knees.

c. 1803AAV-VOPS-1007 and 1833AAV-VOPS-1008, Performance Step 3, Attach tow bar proxy event.

(1) Description. The functional movement for this assessment is a deadlift. The deadlift will be a single repetition lift and hold of an Olympic bar with a total weight of 150 lbs.

(2) Environment. This assessment may be conducted either indoors or outdoors, on a generally level and firm surface.

(3) Standard. Deadlift and hold an Olympic bar with a total weight of 150 lbs. at knuckle height for 30 seconds, and then lower to the deck.

(4) Required Equipment. One Olympic lifting bar with a total of 150 lbs. of weight.

(5) Execution

(a) The Marine will begin with feet shoulder width apart or under the hips. The bar should be above the boot laces at the start and shoulders slightly forward of the bar. Either the overhand, underhand, or alternating grip may be used.

(b) The preparatory command is "Ready" and the execute command is "Begin." On the command "Begin," the Marine will execute a deadlift. When executing the deadlift, keep your chest high and maintain the curve in the lower back. While keeping the arms straight during the lift, keep the weight on the heels and extend the knees first, then hips at the top of the lift. The lift is completed when the hips are extended, knees are straight and shoulders behind the bar.

(c) Marines are encouraged to 'use-their-legs,' in order to lift the Olympic bar, and to avoid 'lifting-with-their-back.'

(d) Once the deadlift position has been achieved, and the Olympic bar has been lifted to knuckle height, the Marine will maintain that position for 30 seconds. After 30 seconds the Olympic bar will be lowered to the deck in a fluid, controlled motion while maintaining the curve in the lower back while doing so.

d. 0300-MED-1001, Performance Step 1, Ensure that you and the casualty are no longer under direct enemy fire.

(1) Description. This is a 50 meter movement, simulating moving from a covered and concealed position, to a casualty's position, and dragging that casualty out of direct fire to a safe position.

(2) Refer to NAVMC 3500.44 Infantry T&R manual Appendix F for follow-on instruction in the conduct of the Casualty Drag.

7. Performance. Marines must complete the minimum performance requirements in each event to demonstrate that they have the physical capability to perform in the particular Assault Amphibian MOS.

AA T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX G

PRIMARY REFERENCES

This appendix contains a list of references contained within the AAV T&R Manual. References can be found at the following locations:

Joint Publications - https://www.jcs.mil/Doctrine/

Marine Corps

Doctrinal Publications - https://homeport.usmc.mil/sites/mcdoctrine/SitePages/Home.aspx

USMC Technical Publications - https://mceits.usmc.mil/sites/pubs/default.aspx

Army

Army Technical Publications - https://www.logsa.army.mil/#/

Army Publications - https://armypubs.army.mil/

Navy

Navy Publications - https://doctrine.navy.mil/default.aspx

Army Doctrine Publications (ADPs)

ADP 1-02 Terms and Military Symbols

Army Training Publications (ATPs)

ATP 3-21.18 Foot Marches

ATP 3-21.8 Infantry Platoon and Squad

ATP 3-90.1 Armor and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

ATP 3-90.4/MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility

ATP 4-90 Brigade Support Battalion

ATP 6-02.53 Techniques for Tactical Radio Operations

Field Manuals (FMs)

FM 3-96 Brigade Combat Team

Joint Publications (JPs)

DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms

JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations

JP 3-15 Barriers, Obstacles, and Mine Warfare for Joint Operations

JP 3-18 Joint Forcible Entry Operations

JP 3-32 Joint Maritime Operations

Marine Corps Doctrinal Publications (MCDP)

MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations

MCDP 1-3 Tactics

MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations

MCDP 5 Planning

MCDP 6 Command and Control

Marine Corps Orders (MCOs)

MCO 1553_Unit Training Management (UTM) Program

MCO 3120.13 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit

MCO 3501_ Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation (MCCRE)

MCO 3500.27_ Risk Management (RM)

MCO 3570.1_ Range Safety

MCO 4790.2_ Field-Level Maintenance Management Policy (FLMMP)

MCO 8020.10_ Marine Corps Explosives Safety Management Program

MCO 8400.6 Licensing Procedures for Ordnance Vehicles

Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRPs)

MCRP 1-10.1 Organization of the United States Marine Corps

MCRP 1-10.2 Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms

MCRP 2-10A.7 Reconnaissance Reports Guide

MCRP 2-10B.1 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace

MCRP 3-10A.1 Marine Infantry Battalion

MCRP 3-10A.2 Infantry Company Operations

MCRP 3-10B.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

MCRP 3-10C.1 Amphibious Combat Vehicle Employment

MCRP 3-31.6 Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (JFIRE)

MCRP 3-30.7 Commander's Tactical Handbook

MCRP 3-40A.7 Patient Movement

MCRP 3-40A.9 First Aid

MCRP 3-40E.1 Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)

MCRP 3-40.3A Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Tactical Radios

MCRP 3-02A Marine Physical Readiness Training for Combat

MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide

MCRP 8-10B.6 Marine Corps Water Survival

Marine Corps Tactical Publications (MCTPs)

MCTP 13-10C Unit Embarkation Handbook

MCTP 13-10D Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations

MCTP 13-10M Amphibious Embarkation

MCTP 3-01C Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

MCTP 3-10C Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MCTP 3-40B Tactical-Level Logistics

MCTP 3-40E Maintenance Operations

MCTP 8-10A Unit Training Management Guide

MCTP 8-10B How to Conduct Training

Marine Corps Warfighting Publications (MCWPs)

MCWP 3-01 Offensive and Defensive Tactics

MCWP 3-10 MAGTF Ground Operations

MCWP 3-40 Logistics Operations

MCWP 5-10 Marine Corps Planning Process

Navy Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (NTTPs)

NTTP 3-10.1 Coastal Riverine Force Operations

NTTP 3-02.2M/MCWP 3-31.6 Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations

NTTP 3-02.1M/MCTP 13-10E Ship-to-Shore Movement

NTTP 3-15.24 Mine Countermeasures in Support of Amphibious Operations

Marine Corps Stocklist (SL)

SL-3-07707C/07267C/07268C Components List for Assault Amphibious Vehicle Model 7A1 Family of Vehicles

SL-3-13133A Components List For Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

Training Circulars (TC)

TC 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet

TC 3-25.26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

TC 3-20.31 Training and Qualification Crew

TC 3-20.31-1 Gunnery Skills Test

TC 3-20.31-4 Direct Fire Engagement Process (DIDEA)

Technical Manuals (TMs)

TM 02498B-10/2 Operator's Manual for Machine Guns, Caliber .50, M2A1, M2

TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS)

TM 08521A-OR/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, Mk19 MOD 3

TM 08636A-14/1A Operating and Maintenance Instructions with Parts Breakdown - Intercommunication Set AN/VIC-2

TM 09962B-10/1A Operator Manual for Launcher, Mine Clearance, MK 154 MOD 1

TM 07007C/07267C/07268C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 1

TM 07007C/07267C/0768C-10/1A Operator Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles Vol 2

TM 10004A-25&P/2E Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1

TM 13133A-10/1 Operator's Manual-Amphibious Combat Vehicle, Personnel (ACV-P)

TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures

TM 9-1040-267-20&P Organizational Maintenance Manual, M257 Grenade Launcher

TM 9-1090-219-10 Operator Manual For Armament Subsystem, Remotely Operated: M153 Common Remotely Operated Weapon Station (CROWS)

Other

BMU-HNDBK-5400.1 Beachmaster Handbook

BnO P3001_ Standing Operating Procedures for Assault Amphibious Operations

COMDTINST M16500.3A Aids to Navigation Manual-Technical

COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3_ Wet Well Operations Manual

DA PAM 385-63 Range Safety

U.S Code Title 33 Navigation and Navigable Waters